

REVISED AND ENLARGED

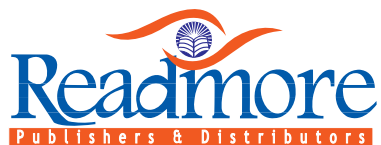
**MAXIM** OF  
**ENGLISH GRAMMAR**  
and **Composition**

Book **10**

Editor/writers  
**D N Mukhiya**  
**Sarah Matchett**  
**Anand Arora**

  
**Readmore**

Published by:



TU Road, Kuleshwor, Kathmandu, Nepal  
Phone: 4672071, 5187211, 5187226  
Fax: 00977-1-4672073  
e-mail: readmorenepal@gmail.com  
www.readmorenp.com

© Copyright: Publisher 2074 BS

First Edition : 2066 BS  
**Revised and Enlarged : 2072 BS**  
Reprint : 2073 BS  
**Reprint (Revised and Enlarged) : 2074 BS**  
**Reprint (Revised and Enlarged) : 2075 BS**

**Readmore** welcomes any suggestions regarding the textbook. 

*Layout:*

Readmore Desktop

**Printed in Nepal**



You can exchange our textbooks from your nearest book distributor if any technical errors are found.

**Read to help others read!**

We are pleased to inform that a certain amount from each book is allocated to the **Readmore** Charity Fund. The fund is provided to the deserving and needy students all over Nepal. The charity always welcomes co-operation and support from all well wishers and agencies.

# Preface

First Edition 2066 BS

**MAXIM** of English Grammar and Composition has been designed to give students systematic guidance on grammatical concepts and various functional contexts in which they are used. The series has sound coverage of all the grammar topics, supported by grammar notes, language notes, vocabulary activities, writing composition and reading comprehension techniques for developing the four skills (Listening, Speaking, Reading and Writing) of the English language. The grammatical activities in the series represent a blend of both functional and traditional approaches of teaching English grammar. The activities based on functional grammar are meant to improve communicative competence of students by showing them how texts work in real life situations and how grammar works in the context of different text types. On the other hand, traditional approach to English grammar serves to provide students with the terminology and rules needed to talk about grammar; and help them deal with the terms and typical questions of grammar in various English language tests.

The exercises are designed to help students understand grammatical concepts in functional context reinforcing the learning of English in the classroom. Many of the exercises incorporate learner-centered activities that include various learning materials and help students get ample practice in applying grammatical concepts in real-life oral and written English.

We are really grateful to all the teachers and students of government and private schools who helped us in piloting the series. We feel privileged to extend our sincere thanks to the publisher who thought of publishing this series, and more importantly we are thankful to D N Mukhiya, who revised and edited the series in accordance with the English curriculum of Nepal, following a new approach to the teaching of current English usage.

Any constructive suggestions for the betterment of the series will always be welcomed.

**Authors**

## Revised and Enlarged Edition 2075 BS

We are pleased to publish a revised and enlarged edition of Maxim of English Grammar and Composition (Revised and Enlarged). Its first edition has long been one of the best and most representative of all English Grammar books in Nepal, and has continually been enjoyed by English teachers, students and parents since its original publication in 2066 BS. This new edition selectively excludes and includes grammar topics and exercises, makes necessary corrections, and adds colourful illustrations to make the series more classroom friendly and purposeful. In this edition, we have separate books for Grade nine and ten. We acknowledge with appreciation the assistance of all the teachers and experts who have given their valuable suggestions for the revision of the series.

**D N Mukhiya**

# Contents

## Section A: GRAMMAR

1. Articles.....	5-21
2. Transformations.....	22-35
3. Question Tags.....	36-46
4. Concord.....	47-61
5. Tense.....	62-87
6. Conditional.....	88-94
7. Prepositions.....	95-110
8. Reported Speech.....	111-124
9. Causative Verbs.....	125-128
10. Voice.....	129-148
11. Relative Clause.....	149-154
12. Conjunctions.....	155-159

**Grammar Type I (Reproduction)..... 160-162**

**Grammar Type II (Contextual Passages).... 163-167**

## Section B: WRITING

1. Directions.....	168-169
2. Instructions.....	170-171
3. Obligations and Prohibitions.....	172-173
4. Posters.....	174-175
5. Postcards.....	176-178
6. Advertisements.....	179-180
7. Messages of Condolence.....	181-182
8. Messages of Congratulations.....	183-184
9. Invitations Cards.....	185-186
10. Menus.....	187-188
11. Recipes.....	189-191
12. Interpretation of Charts and Diagrams....	192-197
13. Story Writing.....	198-203
14. News Stories.....	204-210
15. Paragraphs.....	211-213
16. Dialogue.....	214-215
17. Views and Attitudes.....	216-219
18. Letters and Emails.....	220-237
19. Essay Writing.....	238-243
20. Newspaper Articles.....	244-247
21. Reviews.....	248-250
22. Brochures/Leaflets.....	251-253

## Section C: READING

Seen Passages.....	254-298
Unseen Passages.....	299-313

## Section D: SPEAKING

Speaking.....	314-323
---------------	---------

## Section E: LISTENING

Listening.....	324-327
----------------	---------

## Forms of Verbs

Irregular Verbs.....	328-329
Regular Verbs.....	330-331

## Model Question

Model Question.....	332-336
---------------------	---------

Read the news-story and circle 'a', 'an' and 'the'.

### World's Largest Motorcycle

Gregory Dunham is from California, a US state on the Pacific Ocean. California has the largest population of all the states. Its largest city is Los Angeles and the capital is Sacramento.

Dunham is an intelligent engineer. He is an enthusiast of motorcycle. He built a huge motorcycle. The Guinness Book of World Records says that Dunham's motorcycle is the biggest one in the world. It took Dunham three years to build it.



Dunham built the monster motorcycle because his friends said it was impossible. He wanted to prove that he could do it. It was a giant project, but he accomplished it.

Dunham named his motorcycle 'The Monster' or 'Dream Big'. It stands 3.4 meters tall, measures 6.2 meters in length, weighs 2948.3 kilograms and relies on an 8226.3 cubic centimetre engine to power it to 104 kilometres an hour.

Dunham would like to take the motorcycle on a tour of the country so that more people can see it. However, he would need a corporate sponsor to help pay for the tour.

➔ Read the above news-story again and write down the articles that come with the following nouns. Remember some nouns do not take any articles. Use a cross (✗) for such nouns.

..... California	..... US state	..... Pacific Ocean
..... largest population	..... Los Angeles	..... intelligent engineer
..... enthusiast	..... huge motorcycle	..... biggest one
..... giant project	..... 8226.3 cubic centimetre engine	..... hour

The words 'a', 'an' and 'the' are called articles. 'A' and 'an' are called the **indefinite** articles and 'the' is called the **definite** article. They are always followed by a noun or noun phrase.

➔ The use of 'a' and 'an' with a noun or noun phrase makes it indefinite.

He built **a** huge motorcycle.

He is **an** intelligent engineer.

➔ The use of 'the' with a noun or noun phrase makes it definite.

He built **the** monster motorcycle.

Dunham's motorcycle is **the** biggest one in the world.



**Listening Practice:** Repeat these words after your teacher.

a/an	→ /ə/	→ a dog, a book, a bench, a hat ( <i>before consonant sounds</i> )
	→ /ən/	→ an apple, an egg, an owl, an insect ( <i>before vowel sounds</i> )

the	→ /ðə/	→ the pot, the mat, the ticket ( <i>before consonant sounds</i> )
	→ /ði/	→ the axe, the ox, the umbrella ( <i>before vowel sounds</i> )

Remember 'a', 'an' and 'the' are usually pronounced as /ə/ in connected speech.



**Grammar Practice:** Work in pairs and discuss.

Gregory Dunham is from California.

Why is there no article?  
 Can we use 'the' with it?  
 Can you list out some nouns that do not take any articles?

California has *the largest* population of all the states. Its *largest* city is Los Angeles and the capital is Sacramento.

Why has 'the' been used here, not there?

Dunham would like to take the motorcycle on *a tour* of the country so that more people can see it. However, he would need a corporate sponsor to help pay for *the tour*.

Why has 'the' been used here, not there?

The Guinness Book of World Records says that Dunham's motorcycle is *the* biggest one in *the* world.

Why is 'the' used with these words?

.....and relies on *an* 8226.3 cubic centimeter engine to power it to 104 kilometers *an* hour.

Can we use 'a' with these words?  
 Do you use 'an' with '...4226.3 cubic meter' and '...hat'?



## GRAMMAR STUDY: A or AN ?

Use 'a' or 'an' with a singular countable noun.  
 Do not use 'a' or 'an' with a plural or uncountable noun.  
 Use 'a' with a noun that starts with a consonant sound.  
 Use 'an' with a noun that starts with a vowel sound.

'an' + vowel sound

an apple  
 an egg  
 an inkpot  
 an orange  
 an umbrella

'a' + consonant sound

a ball  
 a dark room  
 a gold ring  
 a strong person  
 a pilot

an English newspaper  
 an English newspapers

*In most cases, the letters 'e', 'o' and 'u' are pronounced as vowels but sometimes they are pronounced as consonants.*

an engineer  
 an ox  
 an ugly girl  
 an urgent message  
 an uncle

a ewe, a European, a eucalyptus,...  
 a one eyed man, a one way ticket,...  
 a utensil, a unicorn, a union, a uniform,...  
 a usage, a university, a unit,...  
 a user, a useless car , a U-turn,...

an ewe  
 a urn

*An abbreviation whose first letter has a vowel sound comes with 'an'.*  
*An abbreviation whose first letter has a consonant sound comes with 'a'.*

an SOS message  
 an MA  
 an SDO  
 an MLA  
 an NTC staff  
 an ELT textbook  
 an SEE candidate

a UFO  
 a BA  
 a VIP  
 a WHO officer  
 a BBC reporter  
 a TOEFL score  
 a UNESCO office

What is the difference?  
 a SAT score  
 an SOS message

a M.Sc. student

*Abbreviations that start with A, E, F, H, I, L, M, N, O, R, S and X often give vowel sounds.*  
*Abbreviations that start with B, C, D, G, J, K, P, Q, T, U, V, W, Y and Z often give consonant sounds.*

*Singular countable nouns that start with the 'h' letter come with 'a' when it is pronounced but they come with 'an' when it is silent.*

'h' is silent

an hour  
 an honest person  
 an honourable teacher  
 an heir  
 an heiress  
 an hourglass  
 an hour's delay  
 an heirloom

'h' is pronounced

a hamburger  
 a horse  
 a hunter  
 a hammer  
 a hat  
 a house  
 a half yearly meeting  
 a hall

an half day leave  
 a honest man



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Uses of A/AN

We use 'a' or 'an' with a singular countable noun:

- *in the sense of 'one'*:  
Robin has a cat and a dog. (one cat and one dog)  
Yesterday I bought a shirt. (one shirt)  
She bought a new dress. (one dress)  
Suman has an ox. (one ox)
- *with jobs or professions*:  
Milan is a doctor and his wife is a nurse.  
Anjali is a photographer.  
He is a successful English teacher.  
Deepak is an engineer.
- *in 'such + singular noun'*:  
I want such a dress.  
Such a book is essential for children.  
Such a boy cannot solve the puzzle.
- *with singular exclamations*:  
What a beautiful picture!  
Such a boring party!  
What a fine day!  
What an adorable child!
- *to mean 'each' or 'every'*:  
They come here once a week.  
She earns six thousand a month.  
I brush my teeth twice a day.  
He comes here once a year.
- *with units of uncountable nouns*:
 

a piece of wood	a piece of bread	a piece of cake
a piece of chalk	a cup of tea	a glass of milk
a drop of dew	a bar of soap	a bar of chocolate
a grain of rice	a lump of sugar	a bottle of oil
a tube of toothpaste	a plate of rice	a pinch of salt
- *with some phrases*:
 

a few friends	a little salad	a kilo
a metre	a dozen	a hundred
a thousand	a million	a billion
- *with these expressions*:
 

have a drink	have a wash	have a bite
have a laugh	have a look	have a try
have a rest	have a pity	have a say
have a bath	have a cold	have a pain
take a rest	take a look	in a low voice
in a whisper	in a hurry	in a fix
on a diet	make a complaint	in an accident
in an instant	as a result	as a rule
at a loss	on an average	in a bad temper
make a profit	make a loss	light a fire
a nightmare	a small salary	pay somebody a visit
give an answer	a short time ago	take an interest in
a cold/a headache	have a holiday	at a glance
get a high fever		



## Grammar Practice: Fill in the blanks with 'a' or 'an'.

**With words:**

.....ewe	.....insect	.....uniform
.....hour	.....airport	.....school
.....carpenter	.....doctor	.....orphanage
.....hotel	.....owl	.....union
.....European	.....ball	.....engineer

**With phrases:**

.....angry person	.....small insect	.....honest man
.....interesting story	.....useful dress	.....good boy
.....very clever boy	.....hourly bus service	.....boiled egg
.....dishonest man	.....brave boy	.....old car
.....beautiful doll	.....small inkpot	.....clean shirt
.....large elephant	.....very good boy	.....ugly girl
.....half-yearly meeting	.....UN declaration	.....FM radio

**With sentences:**

- This is.....BBC documentary.
- He bought.....pen, .....pencil and.....eraser.
- She is doing.....part-time job in.....restaurant.
- Mona is.....university student.
- It rained for.....whole week.
- I saw.....man with.....dog and.....cat.
- They meet me once.....month.
- That is.....ugly dress but this is.....beautiful dress.
- Hem has.....aunt in Biratnagar.
- This is.....arrow and that is.....knife.
- Aryan has finished.....unit.
- They have received.....SOS message.
- There is.....flag high atop.....pole.
- Mina is wearing.....red skirt and.....white shirt.
- Mr. Rai is.....very genuine person.
- She is wearing.....expensive uniform.
- Anita is.....announcer and her sister is.....nurse.
- This is.....ultra-violet ray.
- Do you have.....TOEFL score?
- Milan has bought.....expensive bike.
- Pokhara is.....very beautiful city.
- Archi has got.....attractive sari.
- .....pen is.....thing you use for writing with.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Uses of THE

Use *'the'* with superlatives and with other words (ordinals, the same, the only one) which imply that there is the only one or which makes something unique.

<i>superlatives</i>	Mount Everest is <i>the</i> highest mountain in the world. Which is <i>the</i> most excellent idea for us? When is <i>the</i> first flight to Pokhara? <i>The</i> next story is very interesting.
<i>the only</i>	Mahesh was <i>the</i> only person who danced in the party. I am <i>the</i> only person who could solve your problem.
<i>the same</i>	Mina and Tina are <i>the</i> same age. They study in <i>the</i> same school. We arrived at <i>the</i> party at the same time. My pant and shirt are <i>the</i> same colour.
<i>only one in the town</i>	<i>the</i> police, <i>the</i> army, <i>the</i> fire brigade, <i>the</i> city centre, etc.

Always use *'the'* with the names of the following nouns.

- Religious books: the Bible, the Geeta, the Ramayan, the Vedas, the Quran, the Mahabharat,...
- Newspapers: the Kantipur, the New York Times, the Rising Nepal, the Gorkhapatra,...
- Famous ships: the Marry Celeste, the Titanic, the Dei Gratia, the Queen Marry,...
- Political parties: the Nepali Congress, the Communist, the Labour Party,...
- Titles: the Prime Minister, the President, the Vice-President,...
- Deserts and canals: the Sahara, the Thar, the Gobi, the Suez Canal, the Panama Canal, the Gandak,...
- Gulfs and peninsulas: the Persian Gulf, the Black Forest, the Iberian Peninsula, the Gulf of Guinea,...
- Rivers and seas: the Karnali, the Ganges, the Nile, the Rhine, the Thames, The Amazon, ... the Caribbean Sea, the Dead sea, the Mediterranean, the Black Sea,...
- Oceans and islands: the Atlantic Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Isle of Man,...
- Plural names of countries: the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States, the West Indies,...
- Geographical names: The Republic of Ireland (the Irish Republic), The United States of America (the USA), The United Kingdom (the UK),...
- Nationality adjectives: the English, the Scottish, the French, the American,...
- Plural names of families: the Gurungs, the Ranas, the Yadavs, the Smiths,...
- Periods of history: the Stone Age, the Renaissance, the Modern Age,...
- Historic events: the Martyrs Day, the Independence Day,...
- Famous hotels: the Yak and Yeti, the Soaltee, the Annapurna, the Everest,...
- Museums and libraries: the National Museums, the American Library, the Science Museums,...
- Historical buildings: the Taj Mahal, the Pashupati Nath Temple, the Kasthamandap, the Eiffel Tower,...
- Historical monuments: the Statue of Liberty, the Little Mermaid,...
- Theatres and clubs: the Jay Nepal, the Kumari, the Rotary Club, the Lion's Club,...
- Geographical areas: the Middle East, the West,...
- Celestial bodies: the sun, the moon, the sky, the universe, the earth, ...  
(All planets except the earth do not come with articles- Mars, Venus, Mercury,...)
- Mountain ranges: the Himalayas, the Alps, the Rockies, the Andes, the Alburz Mountains, ...  
(The names of single mountains do not take any articles- Mount Everest, Mount Kilimanjaro,...)

Use 'the' in the following cases:

- Points on the globe: the Equator, the North Pole,...
- Parts in the house: the kitchen, the bedroom, the dining room, the toilet,...
- Inventions: Who invented the radio and the telephone?
- Directions: the east, the west, the north,.....
- Daybreaks: in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening,...
- Physical positions: the top, the bottom, the left,.....
- Ordinal numbers: the first, the second, the third, the fifth,.....
- Periods of ten years: the thirties, the sixties, the twenties,.....
- Proper nouns when they are qualified: the great Caesar, the immortal Shakespeare
- Adjectives representing social groups: the blind, the deaf, the rich, the poor, the elderly, the young, the sick, the old, the unemployed, the homeless,.....
- Parallel comparatives: The more you practise, the more you learn.  
The more one has, the more one wants.

Use 'the' with the following structures that make the nouns definite:

- ➔ Quantifiers + of + the + ..... Most of the workers in this factory are from Nepal.  
A few of the students were in the science lab.  
Both of the girls have long hair.
- ➔ Nouns with definite clauses: The apples in this basket are from Syangja.  
The students in this list are from Nepalgunj.  
The book in his hand is written by Devkota.  
The juice in this glass is very tasty.
- ➔ The + noun + relative clause The girl who stood first is my cousin.  
The book that I bought last week is written by Jane Austen.

Use 'the' with musical instruments when we talk about them in the sense of playing, learning, teaching, having lessons, instructing, etc.

Tina is playing the piano.  
Can you play the flute?

Jeevan can play the guitar.  
My friend is teaching me the violin.

We use *a/an* with musical instruments if we talk about them as possessions or objects.  
*I gave her a nice guitar. He will buy a flute. Do you have a violin?*

Use 'the' with parts of the body when we talk about their measurement, anatomy and function:

The heart sends blood around the body.  
The eye is a very sensitive organ.

Use 'the' with gerunds (-ing forms) and abstract nouns in the structure '... of ...'.

The sole purpose of our organization is to help poor people.  
The making of this film was very expensive.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Uses of Articles with Different Nouns

### → Proper nouns

<i>Do not use articles with proper nouns in a general sense.</i>	He flew to Singapore last week. Archi is a good dancer.
<i>Use 'the' when it is treated as a common noun by comparison.</i>	Pokhara can be said the Switzerland of Nepal. Tushar is the Shakespeare of this class.

### → Abstract nouns

<i>Do not use articles with abstract nouns in a general sense.</i>	Education is every child's birthright. Honesty is the best policy.
<i>Use 'a/an/the' when it is used as a definite idea or comes with adjectives.</i>	The honesty shown by Mr. Rai is beyond question. The school provides an all-round education.

### → Meals

<i>We do not use articles with meals.</i>	They have invited me to dinner. They take breakfast at home.
<i>Use 'a/an' if an adjective comes before the meal or it refers to a particular meal.</i>	She does not like to eat a big dinner. I had a light breakfast in the morning. She served us a delicious lunch.

### → Uncountable nouns

<i>We do not use articles with uncountable nouns.</i>	Milk is good for our health. She likes orange juice.
<i>Use 'the' if it is definite.</i>	The milk in this glass is fresh. The juice in that packet contains no added sugar.

### → Parts of the body

<i>Use possessive pronouns – his, her, my, your, our, etc with a part of the body when it is referred to the person in the subject position.</i>	She cut her finger last week. He kept hitting himself on his face. His nose was bleeding. I've hurt my leg again. Anita put her hand down.
<i>Use 'the' with a part of the body when it is referred to the person in the object position.</i>	Somebody punched Kabir on the nose. Alan gave me a blow on the head. The ball hit the girl in the face. Kabir was punched on the nose.

### → School, college, church, temple, court, hospital, market, bed,.....

<i>Do not use article if they are used in the sentence for their primary purposes.</i>	They go to school everyday. They sell vegetables in market. His father went to hospital for treatment. The criminals were kept in prison. He was tired so he went to bed early.
<i>Use 'the' if they are used for other purposes.</i>	He went to the school to meet the Principal. He drove past the market. He crossed near the hospital. His mother met him in the prison yesterday. He found his lost watch in the bed.





## GRAMMAR STUDY: Zero Article

### 1. We do not use articles before the names of:

<i>Days and months</i>	Come over on Monday afternoon. We went for a cycle ride on Saturday. They got married in June.
<i>Languages and subjects</i>	He has a good knowledge of French. Is Science your favourite subject?
<i>Games or sports</i>	Do you play cricket or basketball?
<i>Continents and countries</i>	Asia, Europe, Nepal, China, .... (Exceptions: the Sudan, the Ukraine, the Congo)
<i>Streets and lakes</i>	New Road, Durbar Marg, Rara Lake, Phewa Lake, ....
<i>Parks and falls</i>	Tribhuvan Park, Ratna Park, Hyde Park, Victoria Falls, ....
<i>Colours</i>	Pink, Blue, Red, .....
<i>Illness</i>	He died of pneumonia.
<i>Single mountains</i>	Mount Everest, Mount Blanc, Fujiyama, (Exceptions: the Matterhorn, the Eiger)
<i>Magazines</i>	Wisdom, Himal, Time, Spotlight, Knowledge, .....

### 2. We do not use articles with some words:

<i>'Nature' and 'mankind'</i>	These are the wonders of nature. Some inventions are very useful for all mankind.
<i>appoint, elect, declare, make, turn(become), etc.</i>	He is the country's first freely elected president. The teacher made her monitor.
<i>type of, sort of, kind of,</i>	I like this type of dress. He is a different kind of officer.
<i>next, last</i>	next week, next month, last month, last year
<i>possessives/ apostrophe</i>	His watch doesn't work. Mina's book is on the table.
<i>by+ vehicles (transport)</i>	Shall we walk or go by bus ? They went to Pokhara by air.

### 3. We do not use articles with news headlines in newspapers and titles in notices, posters, lists, etc:

Most Expensive Statue in Town Stolen (The Most Expensive Statue.....)  
Schools closed for Dashain Vacation (The Schools closed.....)

### 4. These expressions generally do not take any article:

all morning	all night	all day	all day and night
at dinner	at first sight	at heart	at home
at sunset	next month	next June	last week
at night	at school	at work	by air
by chance	by coincidence	by means of	by mistake
by post	by sea	by surprise	in class
in danger	in memory of	in place of	in public
in conclusion	in fact	in pencil	in ink
in time	in town	make friends with	make peace with
on strike	on board	on duty	on fire
on foot	on holiday	on top of	take pity on
under control	with respect to	without doubt	without permission
per hour	sign language	repair work	at risk
suffering from shock/	flu/bronchitis	by accident	on holiday
at first glance		lose weight	in court



**Speaking Practice:** Look at the pictures and say what they are and what they are used for.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Steps to Apply the Rules

1. *Select a noun or a noun phrase with which you need to use article.*

.....water in that jug needs changing.  
 He drinks.....water a lot.  
 She drank.....glass of water.  
 .....cricket is my favourite sport.  
 Sachin is.....good cricketer.  
 He plays.....flute very well.

2. *Apply first the rules of zero article.*

.....water in that jug needs changing.  
 He drinks.. X ..water a lot.  
 She drank.....glass of water.  
 .. X ..cricket is my favourite sport.  
 Sachin is.....good cricketer.  
 He plays.....flute very well.

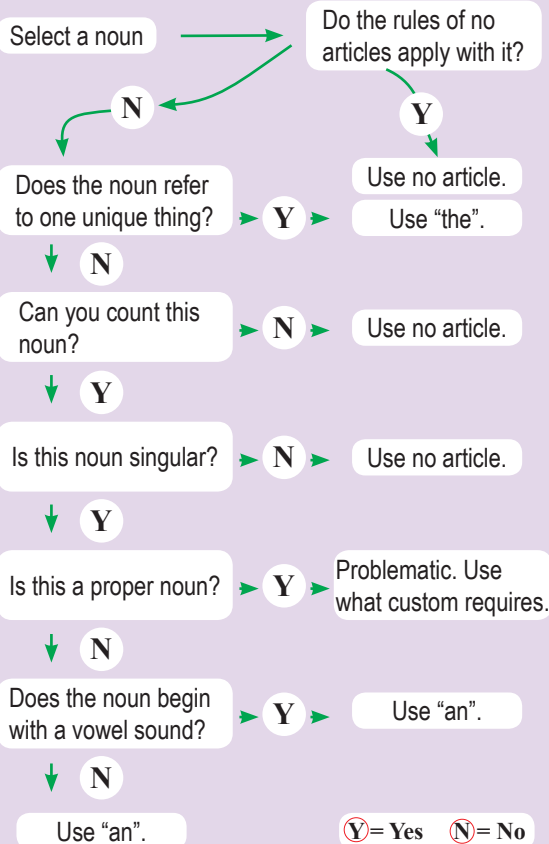
3. *Does the noun refer to one unique or definite thing? If yes, use 'the'. (Apply the rules of 'THE' article.)*

The water in that jug needs changing.  
 She drank.....glass of water.  
 Sachin is the good cricketer.  
 He plays.....flute very well.

4. *If the noun does not refer to one unique or definite thing, use 'a/an'. (Apply the rules of 'A/AN' article.)*

She drank... a ..glass of water.  
 Sachin is... a ..good cricketer.

### How to choose articles?





## Test Yourself

1

Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the** where necessary:

1. Do you have.....SAT score?
2. His house is built of..... wood.
3. Most students hate.....exams.
4. What is.....name of this street?
5. Jaisurya is.....good cricketer.
6. What.....easy thing to do!
7. ....SEE student must work hard.
8. I'd like.....MP3 player for Christmas.
9. Do you have.....American passport?
10. Subodh enjoys reading.....mystery novels.
11. ....dogs you keep are very well behaved.
12. Of all sports.....cricket is my favourite.
13. Mr. Chaudhary is.....really good person.
14. I stuck.....stamp on that envelope.
15. ....Sahara is the world's biggest desert.
16. When did you get home at.....night?
17. She has.....part-time job at a restaurant.
18. Black isn't.....good colour for me.
19. ....farmer that I told you about is standing over there.
20. My brother is expert at repairing.....Nokia mobiles.
21. ....USA was founded in the eighteenth century.
22. Most probably Susan has gone to play at.....friend's house.
23. I spoke with.....Indian film director that I told you about.
24. Generally speaking, .....boys are physically stronger than girls.
25. Where did you go last night? We went to.....restaurant that you recommended.



## Test Yourself

2

Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the** where necessary:

1. Sudan is wearing.....polyester tie.
2. My sister has got.....high fever.
3. We walked for.....mile or two.
4. The Grand Canal is the world's.....longest canal system.
5. ....opportunity like this comes once in a lifetime.
6. Mercury is the second hottest planet after.....Venus.
7. The repairs cost.....thousand rupees.
8. It takes me.....hour to walk there and back.
9. The capital of.....United Kingdom is the city of London.
10. Everyone must do what he thinks is.....best.
11. My father used to send a letter by.....post.

12. Do you know which is.....largest river in China?
13. My grandmother likes.....flowers very much.
14. I can't easily give..... answer to your question.
15. In other things.....men are better than women.
16. I went to.....church to observe its architecture.
17. The capital of.....United Kingdom is London.
18. He took.....quick look at my car and decided to buy it.
19. Would you like to see.....Korean movie? I have one.
20. I sometimes listen to.....English CD.
21. Does your father work in.....UNESCO office?
22. What's the matter with the phone? I can't get.....dialling tone?
23. His father is.....vegetarian. He doesn't eat.....meat.
24. ....eclipse happens when the earth and the moon are in line with the sun.
25. "Pemba came top of her class." "Really? That's.....wonderful news!"



### Test Yourself



Fill in the blanks with **a, an or the** where necessary:

1. What.....amazing story! Do you like to read it?
2. Sabnam woke up with.....bad headache this morning.
3. Southern Asia is.....world's largest producer of tea.
4. They like to play.....basketball. They are very good at it.
5. Do you like.....wine? - No, I don't drink any alcohol.
6. He is.....Chinese and his father is.....American.
7. Binod and Anu are.....brother and.....sister.
8. Breathing is.....automatic function of the body.
9. What.....language can you speak very fast?
10. Have you read a book on.....history of China?
11. He went to his kingdom without.....heir.
12. The children wandered about the town for.....hour or so.
13. The company has.....central office in Kathmandu.
14. I need.....new calculator. This one is broken.
15. Manila is the capital of.....Philippines.
16. He is one of.....smartest people I know.
17. ....moon orbits.....earth every 28 days.
18. Can you pass me.....butter, please? - It's not butter. It's margarine!
19. I hate.....dogs that live in the next house. They bark all night.
20. I have got.....idea to solve this problem.
21. Don't forget to buy.....flowers on the way home.
22. Have you seen.....unidentified flying object?
23. Did you make.....profit on your land when you sold it?
24. Her knowledge of.....English is pretty good.
25. Her new scarf is made of.....very soft wool.



## Test Yourself

4

Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the** where necessary:

1. His father went to.....school to talk to.....Principal.
2. The second highest mountain in the world is.....K2.
3. Look out! There's.....bee on your arm.
4. What type of.....house would you like to have?
5. Look! There's.....big black bird on top of your car.
6. We're going to buy.....new computer next week.
7. I saw a lady with.....white umbrella.
8. ....best definition is often.....simplest.
9. May I borrow.....pencil? - Yes, take this one.
10. Mount Everest is.....highest mountain on the earth.
11. I can't remember.....exact meaning of this word.
12. I can't believe I failed.....yesterday's test!
13. We went for a swim yesterday. ....water was very cold.
14. I must show.....dresses that I bought at the supermarket.
15. ....exams that I took last month were very difficult.
16. I enjoy taking.....photographs. It's my business.
17. Kiran is.....tallest student in his class.
18. Where is.....dress? I put it in the cupboard.
19. Where did you put.....butter I bought last week?
20. ....Australian wool is exported to many countries.
21. At what time do you normally have.....breakfast?
22. I went to.....hospital to visit my friend.
23. Mr. Basnet was on.....holiday for two weeks.
24. He started playing.....football when he was ten.
25. In some things.....women are better than men.



## Test Yourself

5

Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the** where necessary:

1. I recommend you to eat.....apple pie at this restaurant.
2. It was a beautiful day. There wasn't a cloud in.....sky.
3. Can you tell me how to get to.....nearest post office?
4. Do you take.....sugar in your tea? - No, not any more.
5. He was suffering from.....flu and was not able to speak.....word.
6. I requested.....teacher to repeat the question again.
7. I am.....vegetarian; you won't get.....meat at my house.
8. She was taken to.....hospital suffering from.....shock.
9. The wild pig came into.....garden looking for.....food.
10. His uncle is.....SDO and his father is.....MLA.
11. Who was.....first man to set foot on.....moon?

12. .... place we liked best was Raman's .... village.
13. The parcel will be sent by .... sea instead of by .... air.
14. .... Rhine is one of .... principal rivers of .... Europe.
15. .... Mathematics was his favourite subject at .... school.
16. His father is still .... greedy person at .... heart.
17. .... Koran is .... most sacred religious book of Islam.
18. There are a lot of deer in .... forest behind .... school.
19. You can't get .... bus at such .... hour as 7 p.m.
20. They have acquired .... good knowledge of .... English.
21. Amsterdam is .... largest city in .... Netherlands.
22. I hope you have .... lovely time and .... good weather.
23. A very good way to improve your English is to read .... books.
24. His grandfather got .... bronchitis and was taken to .... hospital.
25. I read the paper for .... hour and have .... lunch at about noon.



### Test Yourself



Fill in the blanks with **a, an** or **the** where necessary:

1. I've got .... sore eye. I think I may have an infection in it.
2. Mr. Sahani is .... gardener. He lives on .... top floor of .... old house.
3. There were many tourists in the park. One tourist was .... European.
4. Yesterday I saw .... tall strong man in .... orange shirt and .... blue pant.
5. If you want to make bread, you will need to buy .... flour. We don't have any left.
6. Have you ever ridden .... elephant? No, I haven't. I've ridden .... horse.
7. The boy had cut himself with a knife and .... blood was coming out of his finger.
8. Rosy wants to be .... nurse but her friends want to be .... doctors.
9. Rohit is .... man of extraordinary abilities. In fact he is .... Einstein of our college.
10. You can talk to him on .... phone. There's a telephone box just round .... corner.
11. They have decided to make .... complaint to .... company that made this chair.
12. Jeevan doesn't have .... job so he spends his time lying in .... sun.
13. .... student at .... back of .... class is reading .... newspaper.
14. They have forecast a lot of rain for .... next few weeks. I need to buy .... umbrella.
15. Mr. Wilson goes to .... church in .... morning, and in .... afternoon goes to visit .... friends.
16. I had .... amazing dream last night. I saw .... tiger eating .... grass in .... Royal Chitwan National Park.
17. .... youngest son has gone to .... Pokhara and .... eldest boy has gone to .... Jhapa.
18. When .... Titanic was crossing .... Atlantic, she struck .... iceberg which tore .... hole in her bow.
19. Mr. Rai is .... teacher of .... Science at LMC College.



Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the** where necessary:

1. When are you going to return..... money I gave you last week?
2. Can you please return..... pen I gave you yesterday?
3. Riya read..... ad in the local paper and decided to apply for the post.
4. Can you tell me how to get to..... nearest bank from here?
5. Mr. Sharma is..... only man to help you.
6. There were no more chairs so we had to sit on..... floor.
7. These are some measures to reduce..... smog.
8. “Where are..... scissors?” “Sorry, I haven’t seen them.”
9. The water is very clean. You can see all..... fish swimming.
10. “Where’s..... sugar?” “Are you blind? It’s next to your plate!”
11. I always listen to..... radio in the morning.
12. I think it was..... pizza I had for dinner.
13. If you do that again, I’ll send you to..... Headmaster.
14. The teacher told us to buy a book on..... Chinese history.
15. We heard strange noises in..... night so we called the police.
16. This painting was made by..... famous New York artist.
17. I’m not keen on..... food they serve in the school cafeteria.
18. When you heat..... snow, it does not produce much water.
19. She is wearing..... blue dress with red earrings.
20. Atul can easily make..... friends with other students.
21. My Science teacher often wears..... odd socks.
22. I have..... little money left; let’s have dinner in..... restaurant.
23. I think that..... homework our mathematics teacher gave us is too difficult.
24. I am worried about..... health of my aunt. She goes to the doctor every week.
25. George Eliot was..... pen-name; her real name was Mary Ann Evans.
26. We need..... new furniture. These chairs are getting very shabby.
27. I watched..... very nice movie last week but I don’t remember its name.
28. If you go by..... bus you can have quite a comfortable journey.
29. You need..... TOEFL score to study in the USA?
30. I think that..... health is more important than money.
31. I have a screwdriver with..... insulated handle.
32. He got admission in..... college in the US.
33. Do you think..... English is an easy language?
34. Hawaii is..... island in the Pacific Ocean.
35. Which is..... tallest building in the world?
36. I’ve decided to go on..... diet to lose weight.
37. The accused was not able to provide..... alibi in court.
38. Someone’s knocking on..... door. Can you hear it?
39. Our children go to..... school by bus.
40. Sachin is widely acknowledged as..... best player in the world.



## Test Yourself



Read the text and answer the following questions:

*Why is there the use of 'the'?*

*Why is there no article?*

*Can we use 'an' here? Why not?*

*Why isn't there the use of 'the'?*

*Can we use 'an' here? Why not?*

*Can we use 'an' here? Why not?*

*Why is there no article with the superlative?*

*Why is there no article with the superlative?*

Australia lies between the South Pacific Ocean and **the Indian Ocean**. Like **an** island, it is surrounded by water. It is one of the flattest lands on Earth. It is considered the world's **seventh** and smallest continent. Canberra is the capital city of Australia. Sydney is **the oldest** and largest city in Australia. It is a beautiful city of 4 million people. Tasmania is **the smallest** state of Australia. Most of the people live in cities and **towns** along the coasts. Its official language is English.

There are many unusual animals in Australia. You can see a kangaroo hopping and a koala in **a** eucalyptus tree. The most unusual animal is the platypus. It has a body like **an otter** and a bill like a duck. You can also see a wallaby, wombat, quokka, bandicoot, dingo, or Tasmanian devil. **Wool** from sheep was Australia's first major product.

**A** popular attraction in Australia is Ayers Rock. It is one of the biggest rocks in the world. Another famous attraction in Australia is the Great Barrier Reef. It's the world's **largest coral** reef. The Opera House in Sydney is the city's **most famous** landmark. The Australian Alps is Australia's highest mountains and Mount Kosciusko is Australia's **tallest** mountain.

Australia enjoys many different sports. One of these sports is **cricket**. It is a very popular game in Australia.

*Can we use 'a' here? Why not?*

*Why is there the use of 'the'?*

*Why is there no article?*

*Can we use 'a' here? Why not?*

*Can we use 'a' here? Why not?*

*Can we use 'the' here? Why not?*

*Can we say 'a cricket'?*

# Transformations

## Act out the conversation.

(A TV reporter is asking questions to a rising star.)

Hemant : What types of songs do you sing?

Kumar : I sing pop songs. I do not sing classical songs.

Hemant : Why? Can't you sing folk songs?

Kumar : Of course, I can sing folk songs. But I prefer pop songs.

Hemant : Have you ever sung pop songs in any concert?

Kumar : Yes. Two weeks ago, I sang two pop songs in a concert.

Hemant : Did you also sing folk songs there?

Kumar : No, I didn't sing folk songs but my friend sang a few folk songs.

Hemant : You've just recorded a new album 'ROSE', haven't you?

Kumar : Yes, this is my second album. It's my solo album. My first album 'MIRACLE' was released in 2005. It's not my solo album. I'm one of the three singers in it.

Hemant : What type of place do you like to visit?

Kumar : I like places of natural beauty. I do not like crowded places.

Hemant : What musical instruments can you play?

Kumar : Well, I can play the guitar, the keyboard, the drum, the piano and the harmonium. I can't play the flute. I am not good at it.

Hemant : Thanks a lot. It's nice talking to you.

Kumar : Thank you. It's my pleasure.



We use different sentences to assert something or to ask questions.

I sing pop songs.

It asserts YES. It is an **affirmative** (positive) sentence.

I do not sing classical songs.

It asserts NO. It is a **negative** sentence.

Have you ever sung pop songs in any concert?

It asks a question. It seeks an answer in YES or NO. It is an **interrogative** sentence. It is also called a Yes/No question.



**Listening Practice:** Repeat these sentences after your teacher.

<i>Interrogative</i>	<i>Affirmative</i>	<i>Negative</i>
Do they dance?	Yes, they dance.	No, they do not dance.
Does he dance?	Yes, he dances.	No, he does not dance.
Did she dance?	Yes, she danced.	No, she did not dance.
Can she dance?	Yes, she can dance.	No, she cannot dance.
Will he dance?	Yes, he will dance.	No, he will not dance.
Have they danced?	Yes, they have danced.	No, they have not danced.



**Grammar Practice:** Tick (✓) the options that are true for each statement.

He writes his name in capitals.

- It has an auxiliary verb.
- It doesn't have an auxiliary verb.
- It has more than one auxiliary verb.
- It has only a main verb.

He can write his name in capitals.

- It has an auxiliary verb.
- It doesn't have an auxiliary verb.
- It has more than one auxiliary verb.
- It has only a main verb.

He will write his name in capitals.

- It has an auxiliary verb.
- It doesn't have an auxiliary verb.
- It has more than one auxiliary verb.
- It has only a main verb.

He will have written his name in capitals.

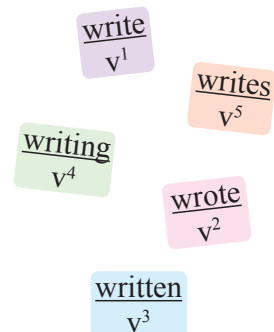
- It has an auxiliary verb.
- It doesn't have an auxiliary verb.
- It has more than one auxiliary verb.
- It has only a main verb.

**Now work in groups and discuss:**

Does the sentence have an auxiliary verb or not? If yes, what is it? If not, what is the main verb and what is its form ( $v^1$ ,  $v^2$ ,  $v^5$ )?

- Present plural verb ( $v^1$ ) – write (first form/root verb)
- Present singular verb ( $v^5$ ) – writes
- Past verb ( $v^2$ ) – wrote

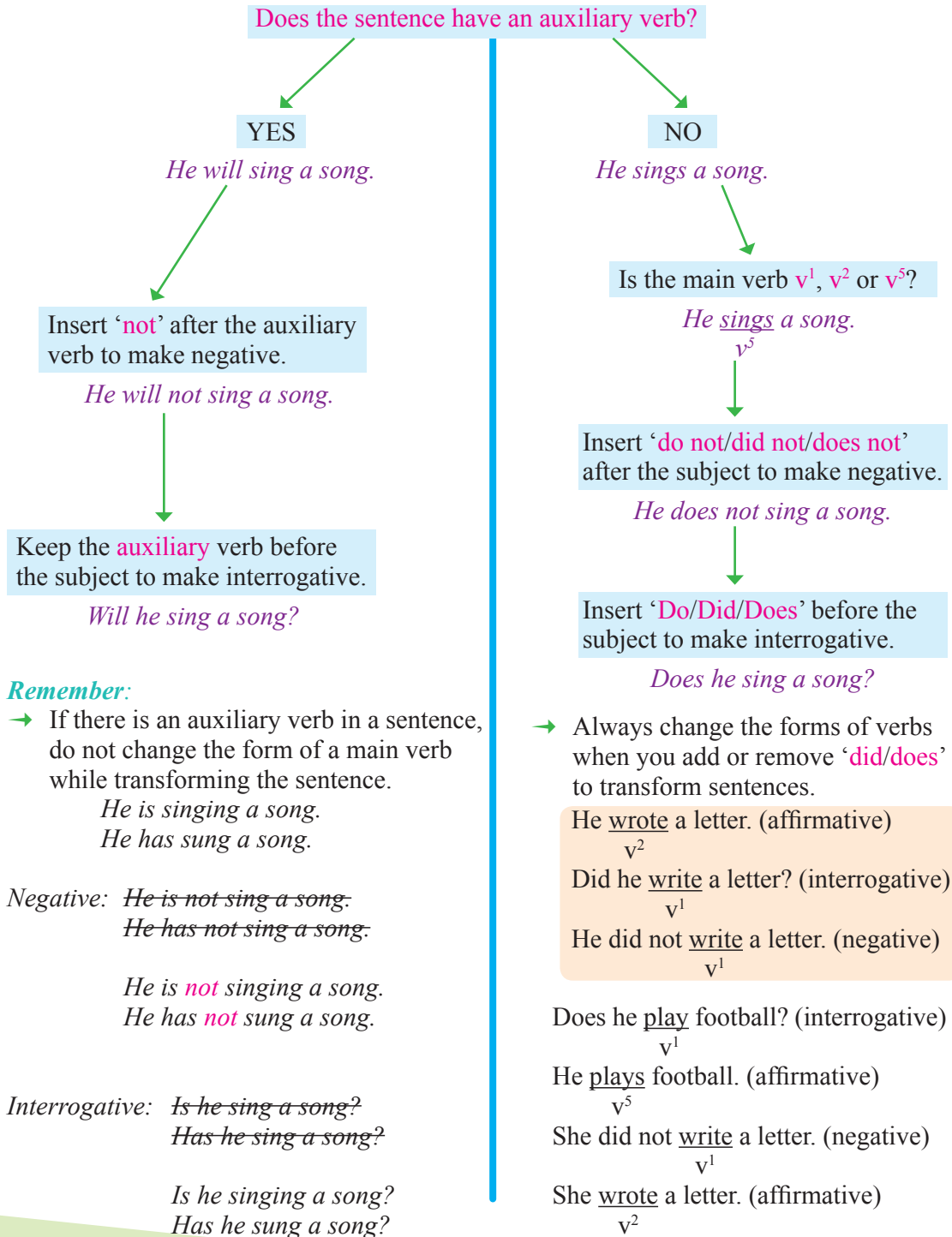
- a. I sing pop songs.  
*It does not have an auxiliary verb.*  
*It has a main verb 'sing'. It is a present plural verb ( $v^1$ ).*
- b. I can sing folk songs.
- c. I sang two pop songs in a concert.
- d. You've just recorded a new album 'ROSE'.
- e. It's my solo album.
- f. I'm one of the three singers in it.
- g. I like places of natural beauty.
- h. She will have bought a house.
- i. We have decorated the room.
- j. Jiya went to Pokhara two days ago.





## GRAMMAR STUDY: How to Transfer Sentences?

Follow the following steps to transform sentences:





## Grammar Practice: Look at the examples and change the sentences.

### Sentences with auxiliary verbs

sub + aux + verb + ..... (affirmative)  
 sub + aux + not + verb + ..... (negative)  
 aux + sub + verb + ..... ? (interrogative)

He has written a letter.  
 He has not written a letter.  
 Has he written a letter?

<i>Affirmative</i>	<i>Negative</i>	<i>Interrogative</i>
She is happy.		
He can drive a bus.		
We will discuss this later.		
She has received a letter.		
They have been swimming.		
He will have gone out.		
They were having supper.		
We should inform the police.		
He may come here.		
Those flowers are beautiful.		
This dress is perfect for you.		
It's your birthday present.		
He was snoring last night.		

### Sentences without auxiliary verbs

sub + main verb + ..... (affirmative)  
 sub + do/did/does +not+ v<sup>1</sup> ..... (negative)  
 Do/Did/Does + sub + v<sup>1</sup> ....? (interrogative)

He wrote a letter.  
 He did not write a letter.  
 Did he write a letter?

- Use 'do not' or 'do' if there is a v<sup>1</sup> (go).
- Use 'does not' or 'does' if there is a v<sup>5</sup> (goes).
- Use 'did not' or 'did' if there is a v<sup>2</sup> (went).

~~He did not wrote a letter.~~  
~~He does not writes a letter.~~  
~~Does he writes a letter?~~

<i>Affirmative</i>	<i>Negative</i>	<i>Interrogative</i>
He played basketball.		
They go out at the weekend.		
The curry tastes OK to me.		
He turned off the radio.		
Bindiya spent a year abroad.		
I saw her name in the list.		
Tina saves a lot of money.		
Anu wrote some poems.		
Kumar works hard.		
I look fat in this dress.		
Anu cooked this food.		
She lost an earring.		
His father laughed at me.		
The child saw the balloon.		



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Some More Rules

1. *We usually change affirmative imperatives into negative as follows:*

Verb+.....	Shut the door.
Do not + verb+.....	Don't shut the door.
Let + object + verb+.....	Let him sing a song.
Let + object + not + verb+.....	Let him not sing a song.

2. *These words change while transforming sentences.*

some – any	already – yet	too – either
and so –and neither	several-any	a lot of - much/many

He has bought some books.	He has not bought <b>any</b> books.
He has already danced.	Has he bought <b>any</b> books?
He likes meat, too.	He has not danced <b>yet</b> . Has he danced <b>yet</b> ?
I wrote a letter and so did my sister.	He doesn't like meat, <b>either</b> .
He has written several books.	I didn't write a letter and <b>neither</b> did my sister.
	He has not written <b>any</b> books.

3. *Only changing these words, we can change the sentences into negative. We don't need to take the help of 'not'.*

always	–	never
either...or...	–	neither..... nor....
some (beginning)	–	no
some of/any of (beginning)	–	none of

He always wears a red dress.	He never wears a red dress.
Either he or his friend will sing a song.	Neither he nor his friend will sing a song.
Somebody broke the vase.	Nobody broke the vase.
	Did anybody break the vase?
Some of them are in the hall.	None of them are in the hall.

4. *The parallel structures in sentences take the same forms of auxiliary verbs.*

I play basketball and so do they.	Does he write a poem? Yes, he does.
She likes apples and so does her sister.	He is not a pilot. Neither is his father.
Riya wrote a poem but her brother did not.	Did he write a letter? No, he did not.
I can play basketball but she can't.	I like mushroom pizza but they do not.

5. *Common errors:*

Incorrect	Correct
He has not slept already.	He has not slept yet.
He does not eat some food.	He does not eat any food.
Does he sings songs?	Does he sing songs?
Have you not wrote a letter?	Have you not written a letter?
They do not never smoke.	They never smoke.
He willn't sing a song.	He won't sing a song.
She liked meat but her friend doesn't.	She liked meat but her friend didn't.



**Grammar Practice:** Change the following sentences into as indicated in brackets.

1. She heard somebody calling. ('what' question)
2. Cheering crowds greeted the arrival of Michael Jackson. (negative)
3. He gave me an angry response. (yes/no question)
4. Kiran has written several books. (negative)
5. He passed his driving test first go. ('what' question)
6. Nima plays the guitar in a band. ('what' question)
7. He rose from the gutter to become a great star. (yes/no question)
8. Someone stole her new camera. (negative)
9. She is the star attraction of the show. (yes/no question)
10. His father is an architect. ('what' question)
11. He bought a spray to kill the weeds. ('why' question)
12. The couple decided to call the baby Deepa. (yes/no question)
13. Nima gazed at her mother in amazement. (negative)
14. Pemba is an early riser. (yes/no question)
15. The company profits grew by 4% last year. (negative)
16. She goes out a lot. (yes/no question)
17. He put his expensive watch on the table. (negative)
18. There was ample time to get to the airport. (yes/no question)
19. She went off to get a drink. (negative)
20. The hall was in good condition. (yes/no question)
21. Write your name in capitals. (negative)
22. They serve good food and drink. (yes/no question)
23. The price of petrol is going up. (negative)
24. Susan can solve this puzzle. ('who' question)
25. The thieves stole ten lakh in cash. (yes/no question)
26. Call me tomorrow. (negative)
27. The children always seem to be hungry. (yes/no question)
28. He tried to kill himself with sleeping pills. (negative)
29. The dog was guarding the house. (yes/no question)
30. They have guessed the right answer. ('what' question)
31. The money arrived for a month. (negative)
32. I asked you to do it. (yes/no question)
33. It matters little whether we win or lose. (negative)
34. She got me a glass of water. (yes/no question)
35. He attended the meeting. (negative)
36. His excellent performance surprised everyone. (yes/no question)
37. My clothes were washed very well. (negative)
38. They were asked to show their passports. ('what' question)



## GRAMMAR STUDY: WH Questions

The structure of WH questions is as follows:

WH + auxiliary verb + subject + main verb + ..... + ?

- Where did you buy that dress?
- How long will your brother be here?
- When do the students come here?
- Why was the woman crying?
- How many books has he got?
- Whose book is this?

This structure doesn't apply in the case of 'Who' and 'What + verb' questions.

- Who wrote this book?
- What made him write this book?

We use WH words to ask questions. WH questions are used to find out specific information about topics.

WH words	Uses	Examples
who	asking what or which person or people (subject)	Who opened the door? Who will sing a song?
whom	asking what or which person or people (object)	Whom did you see? Whom do you like to invite?
whose	asking about possession	Whose are these keys? Whose book did you read?
when	asking about time	When were you born?
where	asking in or at what place or position	Where do they live? Where will you go?
which	asking about choice	Which colour do you want?
why	asking for reason, asking what...for	Why do you say that? Why was he weeping?
what	asking for information about something	What is your name? What did you eat yesterday?
What kind of	description	What kind of book do you want?
what...for	asking for a reason, asking why	What did you do that for?
why don't	making a suggestion	Why don't I help you?
how	asking about manner asking about condition or quality	How does this work? How was your exam?
how far	distance	How far is Lahan from Rajbiraj?
how long	length/duration (time or space)	How long will it take?
how many	quantity (countable)	How many cars are there?
how much	quantity (uncountable)	How much money do you have?
how old	age	How old are you?
how often	frequency	How often do you come here?

While changing a statement into a WH question, remove the answer from the statement.

- She came here yesterday.      When did she come?      ('Yesterday' is removed.)
- Ravi will write a poem.      Who will write a poem?      ('Ravi' is removed.)
- He bought six apples.      How many apples did he buy?      ('Six' is removed.)
- She was born in 1992.      When was she born?      ('In 1992' is removed.)



**Grammar Practice:** Change the following sentences into affirmative statements.

1. She does not sing pop songs.  
*She sings pop songs.*
2. Does he know anyone called Rohit?
3. She didn't call her first son after her grandfather.
4. They cannot speak French.
5. Did he mess up with you?
6. Did he call you a liar?
7. Were you out when I called you?
8. They never come here on time.
9. Will he give you any books?
10. His mother ate nothing in the party.
11. I am not good at painting and neither is my sister.
12. Did he get here on time?
13. Has anybody invited her?
14. I did not meet her in the park.
15. Did she come here very late last night?
16. The children did not wave at the little crowd.
17. Did anybody call my name?
18. Is he a busy person?
19. She will not buy any books.
20. Have you completed your work yet?



**Grammar Practice:** Correct the following sentences.

1. Does she sings pop songs?  
.....
2. He did not ran fast.  
.....
3. She has not buy a car.  
.....
4. Did your brother wrote an English poem?  
.....
5. Who does not wants to come with me?  
.....
6. Shilpa wrote a letter and so does her brother.  
.....
7. Anita has not written any poem already.  
.....
8. "Did he play the flute?" "No, he doesn't."  
.....
9. "When did you buy this dress?" "I buy it last week."  
.....
10. Can he sings Nepali songs?  
.....
11. "Will you write an essay?" "No, I don't."  
.....
12. Does his father works in a factory?  
.....



### Speaking Practice: Agreeing or disagreeing

Complete these conversations with 'aux + so' or 'aux + neither'. Then act them out.

1. A: Suresh has bought a new DVD player.  
B: Really! ..... (I)
2. A: Susan has gone out.  
B: Really! ..... (Anil)
3. A: Kumar does not like pets.  
B: Really! ..... (Muna)
4. A: Binita and Nishant are getting married next month.  
B: Really! ..... (my uncle)
5. A: I don't know how to play hop scotch.  
B: Really! ..... (Neelu)
6. A: They do not understand French.  
B: Really! ..... (we)
7. A: Sony had a dog when she was a child.  
B: Really! ..... (I)
8. A: My father works in a school.  
B: Really! ..... (mine)



### Writing Practice: The facts in these sentences are wrong. Rewrite a positive sentence followed by a negative sentence to correct the mistakes.

- a. A boy wears a pant, a shirt and a skirt.  
*A boy wears a pant and a shirt. He doesn't wear a skirt.*
- b. Apples can be green, red or black.  
.....
- c. Kathmandu, Biratnagar and Darjeeling lie in Nepal.  
.....
- d. We play tennis, chess and cricket with a bat.  
.....
- e. Nepal, America and India are Asian countries.  
.....
- f. Reptiles, mammals and birds lay eggs.  
.....
- g. We cut vegetables, paper and clothes with a pair of scissors.  
.....



**Grammar Practice:** Fill in the correct answers in the blank spaces.

1. Do you play football? Yes, I.....  
No, I.....
2. Does he play football? Yes, he.....  
No, he.....
3. Did he play football? Yes, he.....  
No, he.....
4. Can you play football? Yes, I.....  
No, I.....
5. Have you played football? Yes, I.....  
No, I.....
6. Are you playing football now? Yes, I.....  
No, I.....
7. Will you play football? Yes, I.....  
No, I.....
8. He plays football but his brother.....
9. He played football but his brother.....
10. He will play football but his brother.....
11. He can play football but his brother.....
12. He does not play football but his brother.....
13. He did not play football but his brother.....
14. He cannot play football but his brother.....
15. He plays football and so..... his brother.
16. He played football and so..... his brother.
17. He will play football and so..... his brother.
18. He can play football and so..... his brother.
19. He does not play football and neither..... his brother.
20. He did not play football and neither..... his brother.
21. He cannot play football and neither..... his brother.
22. I like apples but I..... cherries.
23. His father isn't a doctor; he..... an engineer. He designs buildings.
24. She invited me but she..... invite friends.
25. Nita can climb a tree but she..... a mountain.
26. Miss Rai teaches us English but she..... us Maths.
27. They do not play basketball but they..... cricket.
28. She didn't eat mutton in the party but she..... chicken.
29. I cannot play the flute but I..... the guitar.
30. I have not climbed a tree but I..... a mountain.



## Test Yourself

1

Change the following sentences as indicated in the brackets:

- Does television affect children's behaviour? (affirmative statement)
- He comes here everyday. ('how often' question)
- He didn't go to school yesterday. (affirmative)
- Did anybody invite his friends? (affirmative statement)
- He never reads such magazines. (affirmative)
- Kumar must come here by next Tuesday. ('when' question)
- You saw someone there. (Yes/No question)
- Linda does not like fishing. (affirmative)
- Don't put any milk in your tea. (affirmative)
- Peter always finishes work at 6 o'clock. (negative)
- She didn't appear surprised at the news. (affirmative)
- I buy a new record every week. (negative)
- John usually does his work well. (interrogative)
- They carry their books to school every day. ('what' question)
- Did she leave school at 4 p.m.? (affirmative statement)
- He fell off my bicycle. (Yes/No question)
- Either Ram or his friends come here. (negative)
- He has not visited Pokhara yet. ('where' question)
- Her family doesn't appreciate her. (affirmative)
- I did not meet anybody during his long absence. (affirmative)



## Test Yourself

2

Rewrite the following sentences choosing the correct answers from the brackets:

- I love music but my father ..... (does, doesn't, don't)
- "Did she help you yesterday?" "Yes, she.....me a lot." (helps, helped, help)
- Niraj visited his grandparents so that they would be glad. The Yes/No question of this statement is: .....? (Did his grandparents visit him, Did he visit his grandparents, Did he visit his grandparents so that they would be glad)
- He wants to play the match, but they..... (don't, doesn't, didn't)
- My sister works in a bank, but I..... (don't, doesn't, didn't)
- Nilu sometimes comes to me, but I.....go to hers.(do not sometimes, do not anytimes, never)
- I always love to watch TV news but my wife..... (doesn't, didn't, don't)
- Sunita brought her beddings, but her friend.....any. (don't bring, did not bring, not brought)
- Agni cut her finger but she.....the branches of the tree. (do not cut, did not cut, does not cut)
- She looks smart. The interrogative form of the given statement is: .....? (How she looks, What does she like, What does she look like)

11. I bought some books yesterday. But my friend did not.....any. (buys, bought, buy)
12. Did she cut her fingers? Yes, she.....one. (cut, cuts, will cut)
13. She pleased her teachers by doing homework everyday. The Yes/No question of this statement is: How.....? (she pleased her teachers, did she pleased her teachers, did she please her teachers)
14. "Does it have any sense?" The statement of this question is: ..... (It have some sense, It has any sense, It has some sense)
15. Shyam has already finished this work. Haven't you.....it yet? (finish, finished, have finished)
16. Angela speaks English but she.....speak French. (didn't, shan't, doesn't)
17. Did you.....the onion? (fry, fries, have fried)
18. Sudha plays the guitar but she.....the piano. (do not play, does not play, does not plays)
19. The negative form of 'Bina spent all her time,' is: ..... (She doesn't spent all her time, She didn't spend all her time, She didn't spent all her time)
20. I knew him, but he..... (didn't, doesn't, don't)



**Rewrite the following sentences choosing the correct answers from the brackets:**

1. The negative form of 'The waiter served mineral water to his customers.' is: .....mineral water to his customers. (Did the waiter serve, The waiter did not serve, The waiter does not serve)
2. What do you think about his problem? I don't think he.....any assistance to solve his problem. (needs, need, needed)
3. The interrogative form of 'He heard the storm last night.' is: .....the storm last night? (Did he hear, Does he hear, Do he hear)
4. "I have tea at six in the morning." ".....tea at six?" (Do I also has, Have you also, Do you also have)
5. "The minister cut the tape." .....the minister cut the tape? (Do, Does, Did)
6. "Do you like pop songs, Priya?" "No, I.....like it very much." (don't, doesn't, didn't)
7. The interrogative form of 'Binod wrote a letter last week.' is: .....? (When did he write a letter, When he wrote a letter, When he did write a letter)
8. "Have you bought a red dress?" "No, I haven't. I.....a blue one." (have bought, haven't bought, haven't buy)
9. 'Suman went to Sankhu on foot.' The interrogative form of the given statements is: .....? (How did he go to Sankhu on foot, How he went to Sankhu, How did he go to Sankhu)
10. How.....you last week? (does she help, she did help, she helped, did she help)
11. How did Hari.....to school yesterday? (go, goes, went)
12. When I asked her, "Did you have a good journey?" She replied, "Yes, I.....a good journey." (have, had, has)

13. I baked some bread. Did you.....any? (bake, baked, have baked)
14. "Did she know the way to your house?" "Yes, she.....it. (know, knows, knew)"
15. Bhumika will buy a skirt, .....will Reshma. (either, so, neither)
16. 'I've already seen that film.' Its Yes/No question is: .....? (Haven't you already seen that film, Don't you see that film yet, Haven't you seen that film yet)
17. "Does he owe any money?" "No, he does not.....any." (owes, owe, owed)
18. Gita speaks English but she.....French. (does not speak, does not speak, speaks)
19. I went, but he..... (don't, doesn't, didn't)
20. Is there.....wrong with Kumar? (something, nothing, anything)



### Test Yourself



Rewrite the following sentences choosing the correct answers from the brackets:

1. John and Mary went to the movies last night, but I..... (don't, doesn't, didn't)
2. Krishna.....yet. (hasn't arrived, didn't arrive, won't arrive)
3. Man Bahadur drives a car but he.....a bus. (doesn't drive, doesn't drives, don't drive)
4. "Did Subin play the guitar in the program?" "No, he....." (don't, doesn't, didn't)
5. She likes oranges but she.....apples. (likes, doesn't like, didn't like)
6. The statement of 'Did you hurt yourself?' is: .....myself. (I hurted, I hurt, I do heart)
7. He is a student of Grade X and so.....I. (is, am, do)
8. Mohan drives a car but he.....a bus. (doesn't drive, doesn't drives, don't drive)
9. The statement of 'Did you put sugar in your coffee?' is: .....sugar in my coffee. (I put, I did put, I do put)
10. Anila likes chocolate ice-creams, and so.....her sister. (so, does, did)
11. I got the answer right but my friend..... (do not, did not, does not)
12. Does Mina.....up early in the morning? (get, gets, got)
13. The statement of 'Did Kumar build his house last year?' is: ..... (He built his house last year, He does built his house last year, He didn't built his house last year)
14. I always remember to talk to him on telephone. The negative form of this is: I .....to talk to him on telephone. (always forget, never forget, forget)
15. "Did he read the novel?" "Yes, he.....it last week." (read, had read, has read)
16. The Yes/No question of 'My father spent a lot of money' is: '.....?' (Does my father spent a lot of money, Did my father spend a lot of money, Was my father spent a lot of money)
17. The statement of 'Did you get my fax?' is: .....your fax. (I get, I got, I will get)
18. One of my friends has not completed his work..... (yet, already, ever)
19. Mr. Gurung eats meat, but his wife..... (don't, doesn't, didn't)
20. "Did you get your mother a present on her birthday?" "Yes, I.....her a sweater." (bought, buys, buy)



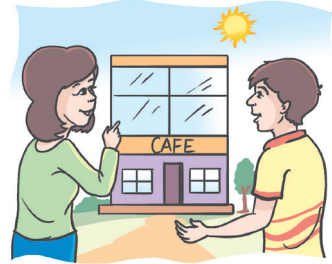
Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct alternatives from the brackets:

1. At the airport, I met a friend whom I ..... for ages. I hardly recognized him. (had not seen, did not see, has not seen)
2. Anita answered my question although I ..... her. (had not asked, did not ask, had not asked)
3. The affirmative of 'Bobby has not made his bed yet.' is 'Bobby ..... ' (has made his bed yet, has not already made his bed, has already made his bed)
4. When he asked me, "Is there anything special you want me to ask?" I replied, "No, I ..... particular in mind." (don't have anything, have anything, didn't have anything)
5. He ran all the way to the shops but I ..... (don't, didn't, doesn't)
6. "Did you eat all the sweets?" "No, I ..... all the sweets." (not ate, ate, didn't eat)
7. The cat didn't eat the cream but the kitten ..... (do, did, does)
8. The affirmative of 'The children didn't fight at playtime.' is: ' ..... at playtime.' (Did the children fight, The children fight, The children fought)
9. On Saturday I ..... computer games with my cousins but my brother didn't. (play, had played, played)
10. The interrogative of 'Some insects carry serious diseases.' is ' ..... serious diseases?' (Does some insects carry, Do some insects carry, Do any insects carry)
11. When I asked her, "When does your school finish?" She replied, "My school ..... at four o'clock." (finishes, is finished, finished)
12. The negative of 'Kumar took a math test yesterday.' is 'Kumar ..... a math test yesterday. (didn't took, didn't take, don't take)
13. I always get up before six but Peter ..... before seven. (get up, doesn't get up, does get up)
14. The interrogative of 'They listen to pop music.' is ' ..... pop music?' (Do they listen to, Did they listen to, Do they listened to)
15. He does not enjoy fishing but he ..... boating. (enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed)
16. The negative of 'My friend's dog bit me on the leg.' is ' ..... on the leg.' (My friend's dog isn't bit me, My friend's dog didn't bite me, My friend's dog don't bite me)
17. I like going to the cinema but my cousins ..... (don't, didn't, doesn't)
18. She finished her homework before dinner and so ..... I. (am, did, do)
19. Mina is not going to cook spinach tonight and neither ..... I. (am, did, do)
20. The affirmative of 'Did the burglar steal anything valuable?' is 'The burglar ..... valuable.' (steal something, stole something, stole anything)
21. His father flew in an airplane last month and so ..... mine. (did, didn't, did he)
22. The interrogative of 'Dad's car broke down yesterday.' is ' ..... down yesterday?' (Do Dad's car break, Is Dad car break, Did Dad's car break)
23. The thief could walk right into Riya's house because she ..... the door. (had not locked, had not lock, didn't locked)
24. "Is there any milk left?" "Yes, there is ..... in the bottle on the table." (some, any, many)
25. "Has Sona emptied the bin?" "No, she ..... the bin." (didn't empty, has not empty, has not emptied)
26. I can't go out with my friends now because I have not finished my homework ..... (already, yet, now)

# Question Tags

## Act out the conversation.

- Ryan : Hello, Archi, it's a lovely day today, *isn't it?*  
 Archi : Yes, lovely. Yesterday was too hot, *wasn't it?*  
 Ryan : Yes, it was. You heard about Atul, *didn't you?*  
 Archi : No. I'm always the last to hear anything, *aren't I?*  
 Ryan : He scooped five lakh rupees on the lottery.  
 Archi : Really? He's lucky, *isn't he?*  
 Ryan : Yes. We don't win things in a lottery, *do we?*  
 Archi : Well, we can't stand here chatting all day, *can we?*  
 Ryan : No. Let's go for a cup of tea, *shall we?*  
 Archi : Yes, that's a good idea. There is a café at the corner, *isn't there?*  
 Ryan : Yes. Let's go.



In the above conversation, the short questions '*isn't it, wasn't it, didn't you, aren't I, do we, shall we, etc*' are tag questions.

Question tags are short questions that are added to statements or imperatives to turn into questions. We use questions tags to confirm information.

You're a doctor, aren't you?

Positive Statement    Negative Tag

You're not going to leave, are you?

Negative Statement    Positive Tag

Group these sentences under the suitable headings.

- It's a lovely day today, isn't it?
- Yesterday was too hot, wasn't it?
- You heard about Atul, didn't you?
- There is a café at the corner, isn't there?
- He's lucky, isn't he?
- We don't win things in a lottery, do we?
- We can't stand here chatting all day, can we?

### Grammar Help

Negative sentences generally have negative words like **not, never, no, none, hardly, barely, scarcely, seldom,** etc.

Positive Sentences + Negative Tags	Negative Sentences + Positive Tags

⇒ We use a negative tag for a positive statement, and a positive tag for a negative statement.



### Listening Practice: Repeat these sentences after your teacher.

*Falling tone* is used when we are already sure of the answer and just want confirmation. In fact, they are **not real** questions.

It's a nice day today, *isn't it?* ↗  
That film was fantastic, *wasn't it?* ↗  
She can do it, *can't she?* ↗  
He sings songs, *doesn't he?* ↗  
Your name is Tina, *isn't it?* ↗  
This is a beautiful picture, *isn't it?* ↗  
That dress was quite expensive, *wasn't it?* ↗

*Rising tone* is used when we do not know the answer. These are **real** questions.

You don't know where my book is, *do you?* ↗  
The principal is coming today, *isn't he?* ↗  
She lost her book, *didn't she?* ↗  
Riya was an actress, *wasn't she?* ↗  
Your name is Sumo, *isn't it?* ↗  
It rained yesterday, *didn't it?* ↗  
You don't remember my name, *do you?* ↗

Question tags are commonly used in English for two main functions:

- *To confirm information that you think is true:*  
The speaker expects the listener to know the answer and is asking a genuine question.  
*I met her yesterday, didn't I? (rising intonation)*
- *To get someone involved in a conversation or to encourage a response:*  
The speaker may often know the answer.  
*His father was a doctor, wasn't he? (falling intonation)*



### Speaking Practice: Ask and answer these questions about the following sentences.

What similarities do you find?  
What differences do you find?

- His grandfather likes to walk around in bare feet, doesn't he?  
His grandfather doesn't like to walk around in bare feet, does he?
- The bus goes to Biratnagar, doesn't it?  
The buses go to Biratnagar, don't they?
- Your jacket is real leather, isn't it?  
Your jacket isn't real leather, is it?
- She hardly ever goes out, does she?  
Sunita hardly ever goes out, does she?
- You have a nice toy, haven't you?  
You will have a nice toy, won't you?
- They're tired yesterday, weren't they?  
They're tired now, aren't they?
- You'd better do it, hadn't you?  
You'd rather do it, wouldn't you?

#### Grammar Help

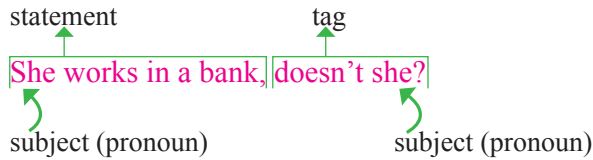
- ➔ Always use the contracted form of negative auxiliary verbs in tags.
- ➔ Start auxiliary verbs with small letters.
- ➔ Use a question mark (?) at the end.
- ➔ Use a comma (,) to separate a statement from a tag question.



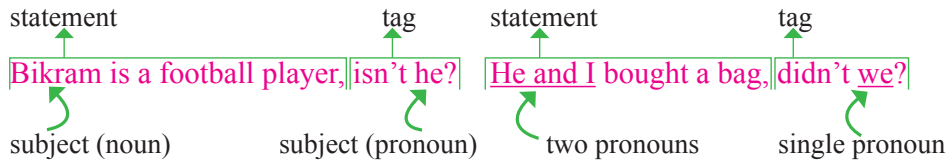


## GRAMMAR STUDY: Subjects of Tags

Use the subject pronouns of statements as the subjects of tags.



If there are nouns, indefinite pronouns or two pronouns in the subject, replace them with single pronouns.



Anita cooks food, doesn't she?  
Somebody broke it, didn't they?

The boys are clever, aren't they?  
Girls wear skirts, don't they?

Look at the following chart:

subjects of statements	subjects of tags	examples
I	I	I can do it, can't I? I enjoy dancing, don't I?
.....and I	we	You and I can do it, can't we? He and I can do it, can't we? Ravi and I can do it, can't we? They and I can do it, can't we?
You and.....	you	You and he will do it, won't you? You and Anu can do it, can't you? You and they can do it, can't you?
Singular males	he	Milan is a doctor, isn't he? His father is very tall, isn't he? His son likes ice-cream, doesn't he?
Singular females	she	Anu is a nurse, isn't she? Her mother has gone out, hasn't she? My daughter is intelligent, isn't she?
This/That..... Uncountable noun Singular thing/animal Something/Nothing/Everything	it	This is my pen, isn't it? Milk is white, isn't it? A cat is an animal, isn't it? Nothing was there, was it?
These/Those Plural nouns Somebody/Everybody/Nobody/ Someone /Everyone.....	they	These books are good, aren't they? Girls wear skirts, don't they? Somebody stole my purse, didn't they?
There	there	There is a pen on the table, isn't there?
One + verb	one	One can do it, can't one?



## Grammar Practice: Add suitable subjects in the blank spaces.

1. Sheetal can play badminton, can't.....?
2. Kumar can play badminton, can't.....?
3. I can play badminton, can't.....?
4. We can play badminton, can't.....?
5. You can play badminton, can't.....?
6. He can play badminton, can't.....?
7. She can play badminton, can't.....?
8. They can play badminton, can't.....?
9. The boys can play badminton, can't.....?
10. Ravi and Mona can play badminton, can't.....?
11. Her brother can play badminton, can't.....?
12. His mother can play badminton, can't.....?
13. My brothers can play badminton, can't.....?
14. He and I can play badminton, can't.....?
15. She and I can play badminton, can't.....?
16. You and I can play badminton, can't.....?
17. They and I can play badminton, can't.....?
18. You and he can play badminton, can't.....?
19. Riya's brother can play badminton, can't.....?
20. One of my friends can play badminton, can't.....?
21. These girls can play badminton, can't.....?
22. Anjali can play badminton, can't.....?
23. Sony and Rahul can play badminton, can't.....?
24. Everybody can play badminton, can't.....?
25. Somebody can play badminton, can't.....?
26. One can play badminton here, can't.....?
27. There is a boy playing badminton, isn't.....?



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Question Tags with Imperatives

*When we use question tags with imperatives, we usually use 'won't' for invitations and 'can, can't, will, would' for orders. We generally use 'will' with negative imperatives.*

Positive Imperatives	Invitations	Take a seat, won't you? Have some tea, won't you?	polite
	Orders	Help me, can you?	quite friendly
		Help me, can't you?	less friendly
		Close the door, would you?	quite polite
		Do it now, will you?	less polite
Offers and Suggestions	Let's go, shall we? Let's go to a movie, shall we? Let's buy a camera, shall we? Let's help her, shall we?	(Let's = let us) After let's... and offers and suggestions we use 'shall'	
Negative Imperatives	Don't forget, will you? Don't sit here, will you? Never do it again, will you?	With negative imperatives only 'will' is possible.	

*As the use of the tag with imperatives depends on context and we often cannot judge the context in a single sentence, in examinations we usually use 'will you' with all types of imperatives except 'Let's'.*

Do it, will you?    Don't do it, will you?    Let me do it, will you?    Let's do it, shall we?

## Common Errors

Incorrect	Correct
Tina drives a car. Doesn't she?	Tina drives a car, doesn't she?
Pukar wrote a song, didn't Pukar?	Pukar wrote a song, didn't he?
Riya has done it, has not she?	Riya has done it, hasn't she?
He can swim, cann't he?	He can swim, can't he?
Somebody has done it, hasn't they?	Somebody has done it, haven't they?
I'm tired, amn't I?	I'm tired, aren't I?
I'm not tired, are I?	I'm not tired, am I?
I shall help you, shalln't I?	I shall help you, shan't I?
He will come here, willn't he?	He will come here, won't he?
He lived here no longer, didn't he?	He lived here no longer, did he?



**Grammar Practice:** Write suitable tags in the blank spaces.

A: Well, I'm glad that the Science test is over.

B: Yes, it was quite hard,.....?

A: We'll visit a park tomorrow,.....?

B: I expect so.

A: You've never seen a leopard,.....?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: Let's go for a cup of tea,.....?

B: That's a good idea.

A: Riya and Anu like to play basketball,.....?

B: I'm not sure.

A: You haven't got anything to eat,.....? I'm also very hungry.

B: No, sorry. It'll be lunchtime soon,.....?

A: Yes.

A: You're writing an essay on pollution,.....?

B: Yes, it's really hard. I've found lots of information, but now I've got to write up in my own words. You couldn't help me,.....?

A: I'm afraid I couldn't.

A: You know a lot about rabbits,.....?

B: Well, I really don't know a lot about rabbits.

A: You work at a zoo,.....?

B: Yes, I do. But I look after monkeys.

A: Your name is Kunal,.....?

B: Yes, that's right.

A: And you live at Kirtipur,.....?

B: Yes, I do.



## Test Yourself



### Complete each sentence with an appropriate tag:

1. The night bus service isn't very convenient, .....?
2. Karina doesn't really want that, .....?
3. There's nothing wrong, .....?
4. Anita hardly ever goes out, .....?
5. We'll be all right in our waterproofs, .....?
6. So you bought a car, .....?
7. The child slept a little in the afternoon, .....?
8. Some people are really crazy, .....?
9. That dress isn't decent, .....?
10. Somebody has parked the car in front of the exit, .....?
11. This hairstyle doesn't suit Bimala, .....?
12. There isn't any soccer violence in your country, .....?
13. You didn't play last Thursday, .....?
14. A lot of lost property is never claimed, .....?
15. You play tennis on Thursdays usually, .....?
16. He doesn't know what he's doing, .....?
17. Suman hardly cares what he does any more, .....?
18. You went there, .....?
19. He has only one spare room for me, .....?
20. Your brother can't drive, .....?
21. He made lots of new friends in China, .....?
22. A viral illness left her barely able to walk, .....?
23. Don't be too upset about it, .....?
24. You don't like football, .....?
25. There are six pencils in the bag, .....?
26. You're new here, .....?
27. They're not exactly slim, .....?
28. There won't be too many people at the party, .....?
29. The large jet roared across the sky, .....?
30. The layout here has changed, .....?
31. Don't forget to bolt the door, .....?
32. The old man hobbled down the street, .....?
33. Don't come too close, .....?
34. You wouldn't hurt me, .....?
35. She could scarcely complain, .....?
36. You're not accepting that job offer, .....?
37. She has got hardly any money, .....?
38. You wouldn't want to invite my friend, .....?
39. They will wash the car, .....?
40. You have to go, .....?
41. They left the place before sunrise, .....?
42. The matter has been very serious, .....?
43. You speak Chinese, .....?
44. Nothing was there, .....?
45. He's the one person I can trust, .....?



## Test Yourself

2

Complete each sentence with an appropriate tag:

1. The river flooded last week, .....?
2. He was one of the most talented actors of his generation, .....?
3. We need stronger discipline in the school, .....?
4. They worked hard to bring some drastic changes in their factory, .....?
5. That was a boring speech, .....?
6. I have been answering, .....?
7. You don't really help her, .....?
8. I am right, .....?
9. Three of my friends are coming to dinner, .....?
10. Don't hit it so hard, .....?
11. Tuesday is her half day, .....?
12. Let's meet at 8, .....?
13. You've been there, .....?
14. Don't be absurd, .....?
15. Everybody loves him, .....?
16. He barely had time to catch the train, .....?
17. There's hardly any tea left, .....?
18. He can barely form a grammatical sentence, .....?
19. You've done a lot of travelling, .....?
20. Don't wear that dress, .....?
21. Nothing came in the post, .....?
22. He's got a very peculiar voice, .....?
23. One can teach oneself to play the piano, .....?
24. I'm always right, .....?
25. This machine only accepts coins, .....?
26. Open the window, .....?
27. No one can prevent you from entering the hall, .....?
28. Somebody was beating at the door, .....?
29. I've been teaching for sixteen years, .....?
30. It hardly rained at all last summer, .....?
31. Something happened at Riya's house, .....?
32. I'm older than you, .....?
33. She was barely able to stand, .....?
34. It's windy today, .....?
35. Nobody called me, .....?
36. She's going to have a baby soon, .....?
37. The children were very fond of one another, .....?
38. The English alphabet doesn't have 40 letters, .....?
39. They hardly meet each other, .....?
40. I'm correct, .....?
41. The food at the hotel was barely edible, .....?
42. Let's go for a drive, .....?
43. The girl fed the baby, .....?
44. Pandas live in China, .....?
45. Riya left the house before noon, .....?



## Test Yourself



Complete each sentence with an appropriate tag:

1. Their new house is very comfortable, .....
2. It's so lovely sitting here in the sun, .....
3. Those handwritings aren't very clear, .....
4. He has not been proved guilty yet, .....
5. You think you're really intelligent, .....
6. Say something to me in Chinese, .....
7. Nobody helped them, .....
8. Seema put the camera in the drawer, .....
9. Let's go for a walk, .....
10. You won't be late, .....
11. Let's go out now and eat afterwards, .....
12. Sign here, please, .....
13. He's still sleeping, .....
14. Sit down a moment, .....
15. Somebody threw tomatoes at the minister, .....
16. Let's take a break, .....
17. That uniform makes the students look smart, .....
18. Look after this for a moment, .....
19. One likes to do it oneself, .....
20. Let's play a trick on him, .....
21. We hardly know each other, .....
22. These are the main points, .....
23. Let's go to the pub tonight, .....
24. She hardly ever calls me, .....
25. We won't be late, .....
26. You and I are busy right now, .....
27. Her style of dress was never conservative, .....
28. His uncle is at work right now, .....
29. I am a good worker, .....
30. Something is there, .....
31. She spent hardly any of the money, .....
32. I'm coming with you, .....
33. Sony plays with you, .....
34. I am ready for the next exercise, .....
35. Shilpa never comes here, .....
36. Teresa is an accountant, .....
37. That dress was a really good buy, .....
38. He reads a lot of books, .....
39. You've been working late again, .....
40. I don't need to say any more, .....
41. You haven't broken that as well, .....
42. I never eat a big dinner, .....
43. You're sad that I'm going, .....
44. Sona and Mona are twin sisters, .....
45. The car sped along the road, .....
46. The food in that restaurant wasn't very good, .....
47. His father is not capable of doing the job anymore, .....

48. She talked to me no longer, .....
49. Let's go out, .....
50. I can scarcely believe it, .....
51. My book has disappeared from the desk, .....
52. No one can deny this fact, .....
53. You're Russian, .....
54. Shakespeare was born in Stratford-Upon-Avon, .....
55. She barely glanced at him, .....
56. You don't remember me, .....
57. I'm a teacher, .....
58. You wouldn't work for this company again, .....
59. Let's sit in the shade and keep cool, .....
60. It's been raining for days now, .....
61. You'll tell me if she calls, .....
62. It's extremely cold in Siberia in the winter, .....
63. Let's see what happens next week, .....
64. No one phoned me last , .....
65. She looks really great, .....

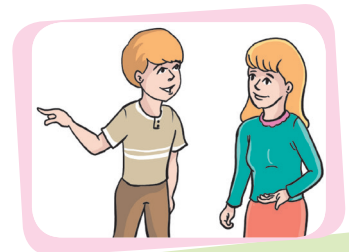
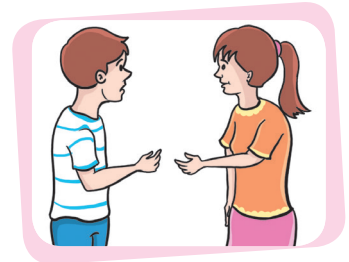


### Test Yourself

4

#### Fill up the blanks with suitable tag questions:

- 1 A: We're going to a picnic next Saturday, .....?  
 B: Well, you might be, I'm not.  
 A: Why? What's the problem?  
 B: Riya's coming to Nepal. We've to receive her at the airport, .....?  
 A: Oh, yes. How forgetful I am!
- 2 A: You know Anita quite well, .....?  
 B: Mmm. Why do you ask?  
 A: She studies in Grade VIII, .....?  
 B: Yes. What's the problem?  
 A: I saw her sitting in the classroom of Grade IX. Isn't it strange?  
 B: No. That wasn't Anita. That's Sunita, her twin sister. People often confuse Anita and her twin sister.  
 A: It's hard to distinguish them, .....?  
 B: Yes.
- 3 A: Is the restaurant all right?  
 B: Yes, wonderful! The food was nice, .....?  
 A: Yes, it was. We enjoyed a Chinese dish.  
 B: It must be crowded, .....?  
 A: Yeah. But the waiters are good enough to serve food.  
 B: I think you'd visit again, .....?  
 A: Yes, I'd love to.





Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct alternatives from the brackets:

1. You are free to play football with your friend here, .....? (isn't you, won't you, aren't you)
2. Your tea has gone cold, .....? (have you, has it, hasn't it)
3. Priya's mother will agree with our proposal, .....? (will she, won't she, won't her)
4. I'm getting more forgetful, .....? (aren't I, won't I, don't I)
5. Her uncle is here, .....? (isn't she, is he, isn't he)
6. Anu and Binu washed the dishes, .....? (weren't they, did they, didn't they)
7. You won't forget me, .....? (can you, will you, won't you)
8. These dogs have a keen sense of smell, .....? (have they, haven't they, do they)
9. We had a great time, .....? (did we, hadn't we, haven't we)
10. The football players were here an hour ago, .....? (were they, weren't they, didn't they)
11. Let's forgive and forget, .....? (will you, shall we, don't we)
12. I've got hardly any money, .....? (did I, have I, haven't I)
13. You haven't been to Nagarkot, .....? (has he, have you, did you)
14. Nobody dares to challenge him, .....? (do they, don't they, daren't they)
15. The children will be safe, .....? (won't they, will they, shan't they)
16. Cats love milk, .....? (don't they, will they, do they)
17. Snow falls in winter, .....? (is it, doesn't it, does it)
18. When Anu was a child, she was very naughty, .....? (was she, wasn't she, didn't she)
19. I am friendly, .....? (aren't I, won't I, don't I)
20. Somebody has stolen his bike, .....? (hasn't he, hasn't she, haven't they)
21. You had an argument with him, .....? (did you, had you, hadn't you)
22. We don't need you any longer, .....? (do we, will we, shall we)
23. I firmly believe that children ought to be discipline, .....? (oughtn't they, do they, should they)
24. I'd better answer these letters, .....? (hadn't it, wouldn't I, hadn't I)
25. Beauty is in the eye of the beholder, .....? (does it, isn't it, is it)
26. The players will come here soon, .....? (will they, won't they, willn't they)
27. There's hardly any tea left, .....? (is there, isn't there, isn't it)
28. You can't help me, .....? (can you, do you, will you)
29. I am glad to see you again, .....? (aren't I, won't I, don't I)
30. The new students are very ambitious, .....? (do they, aren't they, are they)
31. Don't forget to bring your identity card along, .....? (will you, shall we, do you)
32. Ooh! My little sister called me by my name, .....? (did she, didn't she, won't she)
33. Nobody has completed the work yet, .....? (have they, do they, has he)
34. Anuradha hardly ever calls me, .....? (doesn't she, does she, did she)
35. One cannot choose freedom for oneself without choosing it for others, .....? (can one, can he, can she)

# Concord

Read these two texts and find the differences:

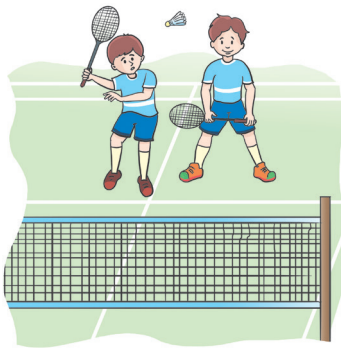
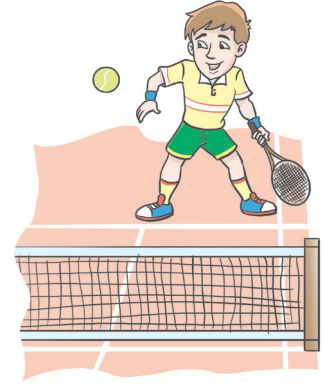
**A**

Nitesh *is* a tennis player. He *studies* in Grade X. Every boy and girl in school *knows* him. There *is* a nice tennis court in his school where he *practises* every day. The number of matches he *has* won till now *is* fifteen. He usually *doesn't* lose matches he *plays*.

He *has* a lot of friends. One of his friends *is* very helpful. He as well as his friends *doesn't* miss any tennis matches on TV.

Yesterday Nitesh *was* practising in the tennis court in his school. A TV news reporter came there and asked him, "What *is* your hobby?"

Nitesh replied, "My hobby *is* to play tennis. I *'m* quite interested in it."



**B**

Anil and Pukar *are* badminton players. They *study* in Grade IX. All the boys and girls in school *know* them. There *are* two badminton courts in their school where they *practise* every day. A number of matches *are* played by them every year. They usually *don't* lose matches they *play*.

They *have* a lot of friends. All their friends *are* helpful. They as well as their friends *don't* miss any badminton matches on TV.

Yesterday Anil and Pukar *were* practising in the basketball court in their school. A group of TV news reporters came there and asked them, "What *are* your hobbies?"

Anil and Pukar replied, "Our hobbies *are* playing badminton, travelling, painting, etc. We *'re* quite interested in badminton."

*In text A, all the subjects are singular and come with singular verbs (is, was, has, does, v<sup>s</sup>). In text B, all the subjects are plural and come with plural verbs (are, were, have, do, v<sup>s</sup>).*

The basic rule of subject verb agreement is that a singular subject takes a singular verb, while a plural subject takes a plural verb.

From the above texts, note down some sentences of the following types:

<i>singular subject + singular verb</i>	<i>plural subject + plural verb</i>
Nitesh <i>is</i> a tennis player. He <i>studies</i> in Grade X.	Anil and Pukar <i>are</i> badminton players. They <i>study</i> in Grade IX.



**Listening Practice:** Repeat these words after your teacher.

singular subjects + singular verbs (is, was, has, does, v <sup>s</sup> )	plural subjects + plural verbs (are, were, have, do, v <sup>l</sup> )
A panda <u>is</u> a shy creature. He <u>is</u> addicted to computer games. She <u>was</u> scolded for chewing gum in class. Either of the boys <u>has</u> gone out. <u>Does</u> your dog bite? She <u>does</u> not speak French. One of his friends <u>is</u> hard working. Anita <u>was</u> cooking food. <u>Does</u> she feel all right? <u>Has</u> the teacher come yet?	Pandas <u>are</u> shy creatures. They <u>are</u> addicted to computer games. They <u>were</u> scolded for chewing gum in class. Both the boys <u>have</u> gone out. <u>Do</u> your dogs bite? They <u>do</u> not speak French. Most of his friends <u>are</u> hard working. Anita and Mona <u>were</u> cooking food. <u>Do</u> they feel all right? <u>Have</u> the teachers come yet?



**Speaking Practice:** Ask and answer these questions.

*What are the subjects in these pairs of sentences?  
Are they singular or plural?  
Do they come with singular or plural verbs?*

- 1 There is a jacket on the table. It's mine.  
There are a lot of buttons on my jacket.
- 2 One of the black buttons on my jacket has come off.  
Some of the white buttons on my jacket have come off.
- 3 Either a black button or some white buttons have come off.  
A black button as well as some white buttons has come off.
- 4 A number of jackets are of low quality in this shop.  
The number of jackets in this shop is forty.
- 5 The writer and editor is wearing the same jacket.  
The writer and the editor are wearing the same jackets.
- 6 The poems in this book are very interesting.  
The poem in this book is very interesting.
- 7 None of the garbage was picked up.  
None of the sentences were punctuated correctly.
- 8 Most of the bread is gone off.  
Most of the apples are gone off.
- 9 The boy who is sitting on the sofa is very intelligent.  
The boys who are sitting on the sofa are very intelligent.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Rules of Agreement

### 1. Singular nouns and pronouns

→ *Singular nouns and pronouns that denote one always agree with singular verbs (is, was, has, does, v<sup>s</sup>).*

Lisa *types* 50 words a minute.  
She *is* absolutely furious with me.  
He *has* not done anything wrong.  
It *is* a difficult question.  
His friend *looks* funny to me.  
The earth *goes* round the sun.  
Mina *was* watching TV.  
The child *has* got a tummy ache.  
The book *does* not contain good stories.  
*Does* the bus stop here?  
*Is* she busy at the moment?  
*Has* he gone out for shopping?  
The man *was* swimming in the river.  
A book *is* on the table.  
There *is* a wooden bench in the park.  
This *is* my new dress.

### 2. Plural nouns and pronouns

→ *Plural nouns and pronouns that denote more than one always agree with plural verbs (are, were, have, do, v<sup>pl</sup>).*

Lisa and Mona *type* 50 words a minute.  
They *are* absolutely furious with me.  
They *have* not done anything wrong.  
They *are* difficult questions.  
His friends *look* funny to me.  
All the planets *go* round the sun.  
Mina and Tina *were* watching TV.  
The children *have* got a tummy ache.  
The books *do* not contain good stories.  
*Do* the buses stop here?  
*Are* they busy at the moment?  
*Have* they gone out for shopping?  
The men *were* swimming in the river.  
Some books *are* on the table.  
There *are* two wooden benches in the park.  
These *are* my old boots.  
All these knives *are* very old.  
My feet *are* aching.  
The oxen *are* grazing in the field.  
His shorts *are* ruined.  
Her spectacles *were* very heavy.  
The scissors *are* too blunt.  
The police *have* made several arrests.  
The cattle *are* being fed well.

#### Grammar Review

Here is the list of some plural nouns:

- ➔ *Regular plurals*  
books, cats, balls, boys, dogs, etc.  
buses, benches, bushes, boxes, etc.  
babies, ladies, diaries, flies, etc.  
leaves, knives, wives, thieves, etc.  
potatoes, tomatoes, heroes, etc.  
photos, radios, pianos, zoos, etc.
- ➔ *Irregular plurals*  
feet, teeth, mice, lice, oxen, geese,  
children, men, women, etc.
- ➔ *Some nouns are always plural and they do not have singular forms.*  
pants, shorts, trousers, scissors,  
tongs, forceps, intestines, goods,  
clothes, thanks, stairs, spectacles, etc.
- ➔ *Some nouns look like singular but they are always plural.*  
police, people, cattle, gentry, public,  
vermin, poultry, etc.

### 3. Indefinite pronouns

→ The following indefinite pronouns agree with singular verbs.

either	anybody	somebody	everybody
nobody	each	neither	anyone
someone	everyone	no one	one
other	anything	everything	nothing

Either party *has* the right to sign the contract.

Anybody who *is* good at computer typing can apply for this post.

Somebody *has* broken that bench.

Everybody *is* ready to do it.

Nobody *knows* what's going on.

Each class *is* 45 minutes in length.

Neither answer *was* correct.

Anyone *has* the right to be the member of this club.

Someone *was* screaming for help.

Everyone *needs* a little downtime.

No one *believes* a word she says.

One *tries* one's best.

Something *is* jamming the machine.

Everything *was* going according to plan.

Nothing *is* going right for me today.

→ However, the following indefinite pronouns always take plural verbs.

both	few	many	several	others
------	-----	------	---------	--------

Both men *were* charged of murder.

Both women *were* Indian.

Few people *live* to be 100.

A few students *are* not interested at all.

Many students *have* passed the test.

Many of these animals *are* not found here.

Several candidates *were* called for a second interview.

Several letters *have* arrived this morning.

Others *have* met similar problems.

→ Subjects with 'each, each of, every, either, either of, neither, neither of, one, one of, etc' are always singular and agree with singular verbs.

Each and every student *has* a textbook.

Each and every man *has* equal rights.

Every man and woman *has* the right to good medical care.

Every letter *was* carefully checked.

Each lesson in this book *is* very interesting.

Each of the girls *sings* well.

Neither of the boys *is* interested in this course.

Neither of them *is* available to speak right now.

Either of us *is* capable of doing the job.

Either of the girls *comes* here today.

One of my friends *wants* to meet the Principal.

One of them *was* very sick.

#### 4. Uncountable nouns

→ *Uncountable nouns are always singular and agree with singular verbs (is, was, has, does, v<sup>s</sup>).*

Water *freezes* at 32°F.  
Coffee *was* served during the intermission.  
Air *is* a mixture of gases.  
Hydrogen *is* highly explosive.  
Rice *is* the country's biggest export.  
Salt *dissolves* in water.  
Sugar *is* the destroyer of healthy teeth.  
Gold *is* very expensive.  
Measles *is* a serious illness.  
Education *is* a top priority.  
Physics *is* a difficult subject.  
Politics *doesn't* interest me.  
Linguistics *is* my favourite subject.  
All his luggage *was* lost.  
Our baggage *has* been loaded into the car.  
All the equipment *is* cleaned regularly.  
All the furniture *was* made of wood.  
The traffic here *is* very busy.  
The weather *was* awful last year.  
Good news *has* pleased them.  
The apparatus *does* not work well for the experiment.  
The scenery *is* very nice in the mountains.  
All the information *is* available at the website.  
The homework for the winter vacation *was* on the blackboard.

#### Grammar Review

Here is the list of uncountable nouns:

Liquids:	juice, water, coffee, milk, ....
Gases:	oxygen, air, carbon dioxide, ....
Foods:	cake, bread, meat, fruit, rice, ....
Particles:	dust, salt, sand, sugar, ....
Solid elements:	gold, iron, silver, metal, ....
Diseases:	malaria, cancer, measles, mumps, ....
Abstract ideas:	education, truth, honesty, music, ...
Subjects:	physics, mathematics, athletics, politics, statistics, linguistics, ethics,....
Others:	luggage, baggage, furniture, equipment, scenery, traffic, weather, information, apparatus, dust, machinery, money, advice, news, homework, etc.

#### 5. Verbal nouns

→ *Verbal nouns (gerunds and to-infinitives) always agree with singular verbs (is, was, has, does, v<sup>s</sup>).*

Walking <i>is</i> a healthy exercise.	To walk <i>is</i> healthy.
Dancing <i>is</i> a good way to keep fit.	To err <i>is</i> human.
Swimming always <i>gives</i> me a good appetite.	To smoke <i>is</i> injurious to our health.

#### 6. Adjectives as subjects

→ *Some adjectives with 'the' occur as the subject and agree with plural verbs.*

The poor <i>are</i> given shelter.	The rich <i>are</i> happy.
The old <i>are</i> treated with great compassion.	The young <i>have</i> great expectations.
The sick <i>were</i> given free treatment.	The intelligent <i>are</i> selected.
The Chinese <i>are</i> hard-working.	

#### 7. Arithmetic sums

→ *Arithmetic sums normally agree with singular verbs (is, was, has, does, v<sup>s</sup>).*

Three plus three <i>equals</i> six.	Ten minus four <i>is</i> six.
Two times six <i>is</i> twelve.	Three subtracted from seven <i>is</i> four.
Twenty divided by five <i>equals</i> four.	Two plus two <i>is</i> four.
Four times four divided by two <i>is</i> eight.	

## 8. Proper nouns ending in -s

→ *The names and titles of books, countries, hotels, shows, etc normally agree with singular verbs.*

*Great Expectations* was written by Charles Dickens.

*Gulliver's Travels* is a famous book by Jonathan Swift.

*Tom and Jerry* is a famous cartoon.

*The United States* has a big army.

*The United Nations* is an international organization of sovereign countries.

*Athens* is one of the oldest cities in Europe.

## 9. Plural expressions of distance, money, time, etc considered as a single unit

→ *Plural expressions of distance, money, time, etc normally agree with singular verbs.*

Ten dollars *is* a high price to pay.

Ten thousand rupees *is* enough for this work.

Five years *is* the maximum sentence for that offense.

Six months *is* not enough time to complete this project.

Two kilos of rice *costs* about two hundred rupees.

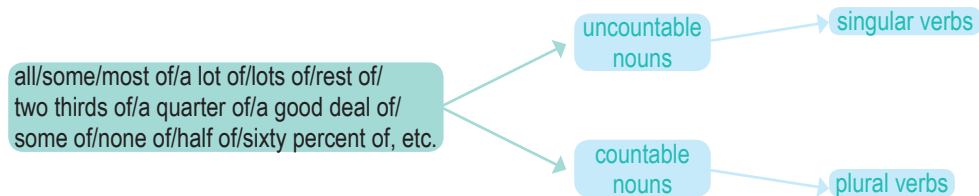
Hundred miles *is* a long distance.

Two lakh rupees *was* set aside for emergencies.

Twenty thousand rupees *is* the admission fee for this course.

## 10. Expressions of quantity

→ *Words that indicate percent, fraction, part, majority, some, all, none, etc agree with singular or plural verbs depending on what types of nouns follow them.*



All of **the food** *is* gone off.

All **the children** *are* physically strong.

A lot of **water** *was* put in the hay.

A lot of **students** *were* taught this course.

Most of **the bread** *is* gone off.

Most of **the students** *are* out of discipline.

Some of **the beads** *are* missing.

Some of **the water** *is* gone.

Two-thirds of **the book** *is* torn.

Two-thirds of **the books** *were* interesting.

A quarter of **it** *was* nice.

A quarter of **them** *were* not good.

Lots of **money** *was* spent.

A good deal of **time** *was* given.

A good deal of **efforts** *are* needed.

Two-thirds of **the workers** *are* satisfied with the wages.

Sixty percent of **the students** *have* scored more than eighty marks in English.

## 11. Expressions that separate subjects and verbs

→ Sometimes the subject is separated from the verb by words such as '*as well as, along with, besides, with, together with*' and some other prepositional phrases', in that condition choose the verb according to the number of the first subject.

Riya as well as her sisters **knows** this very well.

The daughters as well as their mother **have** arranged a party.

The students along with their teacher **were** in the classroom.

The politician, along with the newsmen, **is** expected shortly.

The chair, together with the tables, **is** new.

The apples in this basket **are** ripe.

All the songs on this CD **are** pretty good.

The boy at the door **is** waiting for somebody.

The workers, rather than the manager, **have** done it.

The condition of these villagers **is** pitiable.

## 12. Subjects with 'and'

→ A compound subject whose parts are joined by 'and' normally takes a plural verb.

Riya and Mona *are* in the park.

Father and son *have* dug the field.

Blue and pink *are* my favourite colours.

Dogs and cats *are* pet animals.

My brother and sister *study* in Grade VII.

He and I *have* planned a surprise party for Tina.

Both he and his wife *are* vegetarians.

Milk, juice and bread *are* available in this shop.

My friend and my cousin *are* in the hall.

The writer and the editor *were* in the park.

→ When two nouns together joined by 'and' form a phrase which expresses a single idea, the subjects agree with singular verbs.

Truth and honesty *is* a good virtue.

Slow and steady *wins* the race.

Time and tide *waits* for none.

Bread and butter *is* a good breakfast.

Whisky and soda *is* only his food.

The crown and glory of life *is* character.

Rice and curry *is* my favourite dish.

A horse and carriage *is* ready for us.

Law and order *is* the government's main concern.

→ When two nouns are joined by 'and' and refer to the same person or thing, the subjects agree with singular verbs. In such case, the article or determiner comes with only one noun.

The writer and Principal *is* sitting on the sofa. (same person)

The teacher and editor *was* in the classroom. (same person)

The poet and mayor *has* passed away. (same person)

My guardian and uncle *is* coming to see me today. (same person)

→ When they refer to two persons or things, the subjects agree with plural verbs. In such case, the article or determiner comes with only one noun.

The writer and the Principal *are* sitting on the sofa. (two persons)

The teacher and the editor *were* in the classroom. (two persons)

The poet and the mayor *have* passed away. (two persons)

My guardian and my uncle *are* coming to see me today. (two persons)

### 13. Subjects with 'either...or, neither...nor, or'

→ When nouns or pronouns are joined by 'or, nor, either...or, neither...nor' the verb often agrees with the number of the noun or pronoun nearest to the verb.

→ *singular noun + singular noun*

Either the boy or the girl has done it.

Either Amit or Mona likes to play badminton.

Neither the dog nor the cat was in the hall.

Neither Suman nor his sister is aggressive.

Tony or Seema has gone out.

→ *plural noun + plural noun*

Either the boys or the girls have done it.

Neither the dogs nor the cats were in the hall.

The teachers or the students are in the canteen.

Either the men or the women are right.

→ *singular noun + plural noun*

Either the boy or the girls have done it.

Neither the dog nor the cats were in the hall.

The teacher or the students are in the park.

Either the workers or the boss is happy.

→ *pronoun + pronoun*

Either you or I am selected for the contest.

Neither you nor he is interested in acting.

Neither he nor she has passed the test.

Either he or they were dancing in the room.

→ *noun + pronoun*

Either Anu or I am decorating the room.

Neither Kunal nor they have won the match.

My father or I was watching TV.

Neither my father nor I eat meat.

#### Grammar Review

→ When a singular and a plural subject are connected by 'or, either...or, neither...nor', put the plural subject last and use a plural verb.

Neither the dog nor the puppies are in the kennel.

You or he was there.

Were you or he there?

Anu or her brothers have gone away.

Has Anu or her brothers gone away?

→ When pronouns are connected by 'or, either...or, neither...nor', put the pronouns in the order of 'third-second-first'.

Either you or I was busy.

Neither he nor we have done it.

You, she or I am right.

#### 14. Subjects with ‘apostrophe, not only...but also’

→ When nouns are joined by ‘not only...but also, apostrophe’ the verb often agrees with the number of the noun or pronoun nearest to the verb.

Not only Riya but also her brothers *know* the answer.

Not only the students but also their teacher *was* in the park.

Riya’s brothers *are* intelligent students.

The boys’ school *is* very far from here.

#### 15. Collective nouns

→ Collective nouns may agree with either singular or plural depending on whether we are thinking of them as a single body or a number of individuals.

The family *comes* from India.

The family *are* always quarrelling.

The committee *consists* of eleven members.

The committee *disagree* about everything.

The choir *has* won the competition.

The choir *disagree* among themselves.

The team *is* in a meeting.

The team *are* in disagreement about the findings.

The government *has* been in power for too long.

The government *are* clearly in disarray.

The crowd waiting outside *was* causing a commotion.

The crowd *were* murmuring in appreciation.

The audience *was* nearly all men.

The audience *were* laughing and shouting.

→ Collective nouns with the structure ‘collective noun + of + plural noun’ usually agree with singular verbs.

His bunch of keys *was* lying on the floor.

A kilo of apples *is* required for this recipe.

A team of players *was* welcomed at the airport.

A series of books *has* been published on oil.

A bouquet of flowers *was* given to the patient.

That pile of books on the floor *looks* untidy.

A fleet of ships *has* been destroyed.

→ But quantifying expressions such as ‘a lot of, a number of, the majority of, the rest of, etc’ are plural determiners and agree with plural verbs.

A lot of students *were* there.

A number of letters *were* written to her.

The majority of students *have* failed in Science.

The rest of the workers *were* allowed to go home.

#### 16. Relative pronouns

→ The relative pronouns ‘who, that, which, etc’ become singular or plural according to the noun directly in front of them.

Prem is the **journalist** who writes this report.

He is one of the **men** who were invited to the party.

The **boy** who has done this work is intelligent.

The **boys** who have done this work are intelligent.

## 17. Agreement in these structures

There + singular verb + singular noun + .....

There + plural verb + plural noun + .....

Here + singular verb + singular noun + .....

Here + plural verb + plural noun + .....

The following + singular verb + singular noun + .....

The following + plural verb + plural noun + .....

The number of + plural noun + singular verb + .....

A number of + plural noun + plural verb + .....

Many a + singular noun + singular verb

Many + plural noun + plural verb

More than one + singular noun + singular verb

More than two + plural noun + plural verb

Pair + singular noun + singular verb

Couple + plural noun + plural verb

No + singular noun/uncountable + singular verb

No + plural noun + plural verb

WH + singular verb + singular noun/no noun

WH + plural verb + plural noun

There *is* a boy in the room.

*Was* there a dog in the kennel?

There *isn't* much milk left.

There *are* six boys in the room.

*Were* there any dogs in the kennel?

There *aren't* many books left.

Here *is* the money I owe you.

Here *comes* the boy.

Here *are* some posters.

Here *are* some English books.

The following *is* the winner of the competition.

The following *is* the news report.

The following *are* the winners of the competition.

The following *are* the news reports.

The number of girls for this course *is* eighty.

The number of villages in this district *is* fifteen.

A number of students *have* joined this course.

A number of villages *were* affected by the flood.

Many a worker *has* rejected the proposal.

Many a boy *is* interested in basketball.

Many workers *have* rejected the proposal.

Many boys *are* interested in basketball.

More than one boy *has* submitted the application.

More than one worker *is* right.

More than two boys *have* submitted the paper.

More than ten workers *are* right.

The pair of glasses *is* missing.

A pair of *shoes* belongs to me.

The couple *are* going out for dinner.

A couple of *dresses* need to be washed.

No book *is* needed for it.

No student of that name *has* come.

No books *are* needed for it.

No students of such names *have* come.

What *has* happened to these old boots?

Who *makes* that noise?

Who *was* responsible for it?

What *are* these books about?

Where *are* they going?

Who *were* the boys?



## Test Yourself



Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets:

1. In my view the police.....arrested the wrong man. (has, have)
2. Anu and her friends.....at the fair. (was, were)
3. Every boy and girl.....to participate. (has, have)
4. A number of students.....late. (was, were)
5. Everyone's fingerprints.....unique. (is, are)
6. Mother, with her daughters and sons, .....gone to Pokhara. (has, have)
7. Either Riya or her sister often.....heels. (wear, wears)
8. A pair of plaid trousers.....in the closet. (is, are)
9. Here.....the coaches and the players for both teams. (comes, come)
10. One of my friends never.....make-up. (wear, wears)
11. Billiards.....his favourite game. (is, are)
12. NEA.....for Nepal Electricity Authority. (stand, stands)
13. News.....what editors and news directors say it is. (is, are)
14. One in every three marriages.....in divorce. (end, ends)
15. Half of the mangoes.....ripe. (was, were)
16. Suman is one of those people who.....too hard. (work, works)
17. Pukar must tell me what..... (happen, happens)
18. His driver's license.....expired. (has, have)
19. I'm of the view that neither of my friends.....guilty. (was, were)
20. Cookies and cream.....my favourite flavour. (is, are)
21. Each of the boys.....taking his own lunch. (is, are)
22. All the books on that shelf.....to me. (belong, belongs)
23. Incidents of alcohol abuse.....for many traffic fatalities each year. (account, accounts)
24. ....either my father or my brothers responsible? (Is, Are)
25. It is one the best books that.....been written ever. (has, have)
26. Not only the students but also their instructor.....been called to the Principal's office. (has, have)
27. Nothing ever.....here. (happen, happens)
28. The boy or his friends.....every day. (run, runs)
29. ....Anita's sons visited this place? (Has, Have)
30. One.....to do it oneself. (like, likes)
31. The team captain, as well as his players, .....anxious. (is, are)
32. The value of these antiques.....not been determined. (has, have)
33. Someone.....carelessly left the door open. (has, have)
34. The West Indies.....thousands of tiny islands. (has, have)
35. Every man, woman, and child.....love and understanding. (need, needs)
36. The young sometimes.....to change society. (want, wants)
37. One of my friends.....to come with us tonight. (wants, want)
38. Neither the manager nor his staff.....anything about this. (know, knows)
39. There.....time to watch the movie. (is, are)
40. Everyone.....to find their own path in life. (has, have)



## Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets:

1. ....the news on at five or six? (Is, Are, Were)
2. The cost of socks and belts.....very high in this store. (is, are)
3. ....either my brothers or my father responsible? (Is, Are)
4. The data.....not support his conclusions. (do, does)
5. The price of these jeans.....reasonable. (is, are)
6. There.....a lot of unemployed people right now. (is, are)
7. The number of books required for that course.....five. (is, are)
8. Where.....the new students? (is, are)
9. No boy and no girl.....dancing in the party. (was, were)
10. Where.....the rest of the workers? Call them. (is, are)
11. One of my neighbours.....taking care of my pet dog while I'm away. (is, are)
12. Which shirt do you want to wear today? Either.....fine with me. (is, are)
13. One-third of the city.....unemployed. (is, are)
14. On the table.....the goodies! (is, are)
15. Who.....what the future will bring? (know, knows)
16. Several students.....passed in the first division. (has, have)
17. Nothing.....in its proper place. (is, are)
18. Smoking.....not allowed in the hall. (was, were)
19. Either the President or the Vice.....signed the document. (has, have)
20. The number of chairs required for that hall.....sixty-five. (is, are)
21. Nobody.....entered the room. (has, have)
22. There were fifteen candies in that bag. Now there.....only one left! (is, are)
23. A car with poor brakes and no brake light.....dangerous. (is, are, were)
24. Both men and women.....allowed to enter the pool. (is, are)
25. Four years.....a long time to spend away from your friends and family. (is, are)
26. Bread and butter.....our daily food. (is, are)
27. A number of students.....taking the exam. (is, are)
28. Everyone.....the right to adequate food and clean water. (has, have)
29. Milan, as well as his friends, .....going to study in the same school. (is, are)
30. Mona's plans.....seemed well thought out from the beginning. (has, have)
31. The poor in many cities.....in slums. (live, lives)
32. One plus one.....two. (equal, equals)
33. The ducks on the lake.....in large groups. (swim, swims)
34. Here.....some new students. (is, are)
35. The famous singer and composer.....ready to show his performance. (is, are)
36. The Great Pyramids.....in Egypt. (is, are)
37. The last question on the test.....very difficult. (is, are)
38. The man with all the dogs.....down the street. (walk, walks)
39. The mass media.....become pervasive in our society. (has, have)
40. Nobody.....the trouble I've seen. (know, knows)
41. *The New York Times*.....a newspaper. (is, are)
42. The dishes in the kitchen.....dirty. (is, are)
43. Everybody in this team.....really hard to please the new coach. (try, tries)
44. The people who survived the explosion.....in a shelter. (is, are)



Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets:

1. The number of big rivers in this country.....ninety. (is, are)
2. A red and a yellow bird.....sitting in that tree. (is, are)
3. Either the driver or the passengers.....responsible for paying the parking ticket. (is, are)
4. There.....a lot of poetry books in the library. (is, are)
5. Either your coat or my shoes..... always on the floor. (is, are)
6. Neither the boys nor the girls in the park.....eating ice-creams. (was, were)
7. There.....twice as many pigs in Denmark as people. (is, are)
8. Neither you nor I.....there. (was, were)
9. A series of books.....been published on oil. (has, have)
10. A small percentage of the grain.....ruined by the prolonged rain. (was, were)
11. After class, Tina always.....for a computer class. (run, runs)
12. Either of those books.....adequate. (is, are)
13. All of the clocks in the city.....at about the same time. (strike, strikes)
14. One-third of the people.....unemployed. (is, are)
15. Politics.....what he enjoys the most. (is, are)
16. The number of students taking the exam.....eighty. (is, are)
17. Everyone in this school.....very friendly towards my brother. (was, were)
18. Precisely thirty years.....his tenure of office. (was, were)
19. Quite a few people.....to think that Karan is innocent. (seem, seems)
20. These materials.....been synthesized from a variety of sources. (has, have)
21. Neither Mary nor her brothers.....what happened. (know, knows)
22. Two hours.....not enough to complete the task. (is, are)
23. Either my father or my brothers.....decided to buy this house. (has, have, is)
24. A lot of people.....Alok to be too quiet. (consider, considers)
25. Neither of us.....able to predict the outcome of today's game. (was, were)
26. Eight minus two.....six. (is, are)
27. One family in ten.....a dishwasher in that country. (own, owns)
28. Everyone.....inner doubts. (has, have)
29. The power cuts in Nepal.....likely to last for five or six years. (is, are)
30. Every man and woman.....the right to good medical care. (has, have)
31. These scissors.....designed for left-handed people. (is, are)
32. Those trousers.....made of wool. (is, are)
33. Neither of the statements.....true. (is, are)
34. Three hours.....the maximum length of time allowed for the exam. (is, are)
35. My father says there.....never anything worth watching on TV. (is, are)
36. My friends who are in the band.....me to play a musical instrument. (wants, want)
37. Sabnam and her brothers.....at school. (is, are)
38. Several of the students.....decided to join the course. (has, have)
39. Two-thirds of the work.....left undone. (was, were)
40. Watching violence on TV.....some children more aggressive. (make, makes)
41. No dresses of that colour.....available with us. (is, are)
42. Ali and Imran often.....with each other. (argue, argues)
43. Some of the books on the shelf.....dusty. (is, are)
44. Two multiplied by six.....twelve. (equal, equals)



Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct alternatives from the brackets:

1. A fool and his money.....soon parted. (is, am, are)
2. The Prime Minister, accompanied by his wife, ..... travelling to India next week. (is, was, are)
3. Anyone who.....to pursue higher education has to pass entrance exams. (want, wants, wanted)
4. Anil, as well as his younger brothers, .....going to study at that school. (is, were, are)
5. Four years .....a long time to spend away from your friends and family. (is, were, are)
6. Statistics.....been revised as a course approach far too long. (hasn't, haven't, weren't)
7. You and I.....supposed to clean the room before Mom gets home. (is, am, are)
8. Neither of the statements.....false. (is, am, are)
9. Still waters..... deep. (run, runs, has run)
10. Eating 5 servings of fruits and vegetables daily.....said to provide all the essential vitamins we require. (is, are, was)
11. The last questions on the test.....very difficult. (was, were, is)
12. The famous singer and composer.....arrived. (has, have, is)
13. Collecting stamps.....one of his favourite pastimes. (was, were, is)
14. The quality of these DVD players.....poor. (are, were, is)
15. The news of the economic decline.....been upsetting his father. (has, have, were)
16. The poor.....suffering. (is, was, are)
17. Not only the students but also their instructor.....been called to the Principal's office. (has, have, were)
18. All of the books, including yours, ..... in that box. (is, was, are)
19. The police.....made any arrests lately. (hasn't, haven't, wasn't)
20. The price of these jeans.....reasonable. (is, were, are)
21. The books borrowed from the library.....on my desk. (is, was, are)
22. *The Himalayan Times*.....sold widely. (is, were, are)
23. Bread and butter.....our daily food. (is, were, are)
24. Three-quarters of the workers.....against the new system. (is, was, are)
25. Each of the students..... given ten minutes to speak on child rights. (are, was, were)
26. Here.....your notebook and dictionary. (is, was, are)
27. Economics.....almost as fascinating as accounting. (is, am, are)
28. A number of people.....sitting on the grass. (is, am, are)
29. Each of the worker..... given new safety equipment. (were, was, are)
30. Ten million gallons of oil.....spilt. (were, was, are)
31. Each cat and each dog in this animal shelter.....eventually placed in a good home. (is, are, have)
32. A number of students.....absent. (is, am, are)
33. Every silver knife, fork, and spoon.....to be counted. (is, were, are)
34. Where.....one of the letters from Mr. Sahani? (is, were, are)
35. Neither the basket nor the apples.....expensive. (is, was, are)
36. There.....no reason for you to be missing so much work. (is, was, are)
37. God helps them that.....themselves. (help, helps, is helping)



Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs choosing from the brackets:

## Lumbini

Situated in the Terai of southern Nepal, Lumbini is the place where Siddhartha Gautam was born in 623 BC. This sacred place.....(is, are) marked by a stone pillar, that was erected by Emperor Ashoka of India in 249 BC. The place is listed as a World Heritage Site and.....(is, are) being developed as a place of pilgrimage and symbol of world peace. Many countries.....(has, have) built shrines and monasteries here reflecting the architectural traditions of their respective cultures.



Near the Ashoka pillar is the Mayadevi Temple which.....(house, houses) a bas relief depicting the birth. Recent excavations.....(has, have) turned up a stone bearing a “foot imprint”, indicating the exact place of birth. The Puskarni pond, where Queen Mayadevi, the Buddha’s mother, had taken a bath before giving birth to him .....(lie, lies) to the south of the pillar. Kushinagar.....(is, are) the place where Lord Buddha passed into Mahaparinirvana. The Muktabandhana stupa is believed to have been built in the Malla dynasty to preserve the temporal relics of Lord Buddha. A smaller shrine nearby.....(contain, contains) a reclining Buddha, which.....(was, were) brought from Mathura by the monk Haribala. Bodhgaya is the place where Buddha attained enlightenment. The tree under which Buddha attained wisdom .....(is, are) called the Bodhi tree, while the temple marking the sacred spot is known as Mahabodhi temple.

The Lumbini Museum, located in the Cultural Zone, .....(contain, contains) Mauryan and Kushana coins, religious manuscripts, terra-cotta fragments, and stone and metal sculptures. It also.....(possess, possesses) an extensive collection of stamps from various countries depicting Lumbini and the Buddha.

Lumbini International Research Institute (LIRI), located opposite the Lumbini Museum, .....(provide, provides) research facilities for the study of Buddhism and religion in general. Run jointly by the Lumbini Development Trust (LDT) and the Reiyukai of Japan, LIRI.....(contain, contains) some 12,000 books on religion, philosophy, art and architecture.

Kapilvastu Museum.....(is, are) situated 27 km west of Lumbini in the village of Tilaurakot. The museum.....(hold, holds) coins, pottery and toys dating between the seventh century BC and fourth century AD. The museum also.....(has, have) good collection of jewellery and other ornaments of that period.

# Tense

## Act out these conversations:

- Anu: Listen! Somebody is playing the guitar next door.  
Ravi: It's Ritesh. He's a guitar player. He plays the guitar in a band. He always practises in the afternoon.  
Anu: How long has he been playing the guitar?  
Ravi: He has been playing the guitar for three years.  
Anu: How long have you known him?  
Ravi: I've known him since his family came to Kathmandu from Dharan. His father is a wealthy businessman. He rarely stays home. He often visits foreign countries for his business.  
Anu: How many countries has he visited till now?  
Ravi: He has visited most countries of Asia and Europe.



- Deepa: You met Anita last week, didn't you?  
Kunal: Yes. When I saw her, she was talking to a salesperson. He was showing her some cosmetics.  
Deepa: Was Anita alone there? Her brother Arun was with her, wasn't he?  
Kunal: No, he wasn't there. Her brother had already gone home. When I said 'Hello' to Anita, the salesperson put the things in his bag and left the place hurriedly. He had been talking very nicely before I went near Anita.  
Deepa: That man wasn't a salesperson, I think.  
Kunal: Anything wrong? What happened to Anita?  
Deepa: Somebody kidnapped her last week.

- Mina: When you get off at the bus stop tomorrow, Priya'll be waiting for you. She'll take you to your hotel and she'll show you around the city.  
Remo: Great!  
Mina: Well, when will you do the packing?  
Remo: Don't worry. I'll have finished all my packing by this evening. But when will you join me there?  
Mina: When I arrive there next month, till then you will have known most parts of the city because you will have been visiting there for a month with Priya.



*In the above conversations, the different forms of verbs express different tenses. The tenses of verbs indicate two different things about the action concerned:*

- the time of the action- **present, past** and **future**.
- the kind of the action- **single, repeated, continuous, completed, incomplete**, etc.

**Underline the forms of verbs in the above conversations and try to name the tenses.**

**Listening Practice:** Repeat these sentences after your teacher.

Generally there are three main time tenses. Each time tense has four sub-tenses and aspects that indicate the kind of action concerned.

	1 present	2 past	3 future	
kinds of actions (aspects)	<b>SIMPLE</b>	He runs. We run.	He ran. We ran.	He will run. We shall run.
	<b>CONTINUOUS</b>	He is running. We are running.	He was running. We were running.	He will be running. We shall be running.
	<b>PERFECT</b>	He has run. We have run.	He had run. We had run.	He will have run. We shall have run.
	<b>PERFECT CONTINUOUS</b>	He has been running. We have been running.	He had been running. We had been running.	He will have been running. We shall have been running.

**Grammar Practice:** Read the conversations once again and find the sentences for the following types of tenses.

Tenses with structures and examples		Sentences from the conversations
Simple present	<i>sub + v<sup>1</sup>/v<sup>5</sup>+....</i> <i>He dances.</i>	He plays the guitar in a band.
Present continuous	<i>sub + is/am/are + v<sup>4</sup>+....</i> <i>He is dancing.</i>	
Present perfect	<i>sub + has/have + v<sup>3</sup>+....</i> <i>He has danced.</i>	
Present perfect continuous	<i>sub + has been/have been + v<sup>4</sup>+....</i> <i>He has been dancing.</i>	
Simple past	<i>sub + v<sup>2</sup>+....</i> <i>He danced.</i>	
Past continuous	<i>sub + was/were + v<sup>4</sup>+....</i> <i>He was dancing.</i>	
Past perfect	<i>sub + had + v<sup>3</sup>+....</i> <i>He had danced.</i>	
Past perfect continuous	<i>sub + had been + v<sup>4</sup>+....</i> <i>He had been dancing.</i>	
Simple future	<i>sub + shall/will + v<sup>1</sup>+....</i> <i>He will dance.</i>	
Future continuous	<i>sub + shall be/will be + v<sup>4</sup>+....</i> <i>He will be dancing.</i>	
Future perfect	<i>sub + shall have/will have + v<sup>3</sup>+....</i> <i>He will have danced.</i>	
Future perfect continuous	<i>sub + shall have been/will have been + v<sup>4</sup>+....</i> <i>He will have been dancing.</i>	



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Simple Present Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + v<sup>1</sup>/v<sup>s</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + does not/do not + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Do/Does + sub + v<sup>1</sup> + obj + ?*  
*WH + do/does + sub + v<sup>1</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + v<sup>1</sup>/v<sup>s</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + is/am/are + v<sup>3</sup> + by + sub*

He writes a letter.

He does not write a letter.

Does he write a letter?

When does he write a letter?

He writes a poem.

A poem is written by him.

### Uses:

*We use the simple present tense to show:*

➤ *present affairs/permanent or long-lasting situations.*

His father works in a school.

She lives in Kathmandu and works at a bank.

He speaks English very well.

He never forgets his wallet.

Sabnam always forgets her purse.

The park opens at 9 o'clock.

The bus leaves every morning at 8 am.

He teaches English.

These shops sell beautiful toys.

A nurse works in a hospital.

His grandfather wears glasses.

Where do you work?

When does the bus usually leave?

How many sons does she have?

➤ *habitual actions/repeated actions/daily routines.*

I always take tea without sugar.

I usually work till 8.

We often buy cheese at this store.

She doesn't often go to the cinema.

Do you water your plants once a week?

Sony always gets up early.

Pemba has a shower every morning.

Atul likes warm weather.

Priya walks to school every day.

When do they usually have lunch?

➤ *truths and facts true of all times/sayings and proverbs.*

The sun sets early in the winter.

Water freezes at 0 degrees Celsius.

What does 'strange' mean?

Every twelve months, the Earth circles the Sun.

Water is one of the necessities of life.

Rivers flow into the sea.

Canada lies north of the United States.

Slow and steady wins the race.

Wood floats on water.

Earth is a planet.

Pandas feed on bamboo shoots.

History repeats itself.

Birds do not like milk.

Gas expands when heated.

Five plus five equals ten.

Honesty is the best policy.

➤ *fixed time table.*

The meeting starts sharp at 4 pm.

When do term exams begin this year?

His father retires next year.

The department store opens at 9 a.m.

The bus doesn't arrive until 10.

The new club opens this Sunday.

The show starts in 2 hours.

The next meeting is on June 12.

➤ *with verbs of sensations, mental or emotional state, mental or sense perception, possession, likes, dislikes and other types of state or condition.*

The fish smells a bit odd.

Do you see that clock?

I love swimming during the summer.

He seems to be confused.

Your hand feels cold.

This tastes quite delicious.

I don't want to work in this factory.  
 I hate talking like that!  
 She prefers mutton to chicken.  
 This car costs a lot.  
 She looks good now.  
 He doesn't agree with you.  
 That seems OK to me.

I love chocolate ice-creams.  
 Do you like winter season?  
 I understand what you mean.  
 The house belongs to his mother.  
 I think he is a good writer.  
 I do not trust that police officer.  
 I promise to be back for lunch.

Stative verbs: understand, know, remember, forget, doubt, believe, suppose, think (in the meaning "assume, suppose"), mean, recognize, realize, like, love, hate, want, need, prefer, smell (in the meaning "to give off a particular scent"), taste (i.e. to have a particular flavour), hear, see, feel, look (in the meaning "appear, seem"), seem, be, belong, own, possess, have (in the meaning "possess"), cost, owe, include, contain and some others.

➤ *Newspaper headlines*

Ten die in bus accident

Koirala visits India

Adverbs of time:

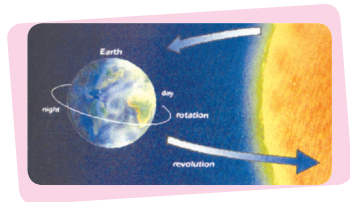
We often use '*always, never, often, seldom, sometimes, nowadays, rarely, usually, generally, daily, hardly, occasionally, on Saturdays, on occasion, regularly, frequently, etc'* with the simple present tense.

Sony always gets up at 6 o'clock.  
 He sometimes visits new places.  
 Mina brushes her teeth twice a day.  
 She changes her job every two years.  
 Does it rain often in your hometown?

He often comes here.  
 She goes to temple everyday.  
 Barking dogs seldom bite.  
 I usually work till 8.  
 He plays tennis on Saturdays.



**Speaking Practice:** Talk about the following pictures using the simple present tense.



Now write seven sentences about the above pictures using the simple present tense.

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

.....  
 .....  
 .....



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Present Continuous Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + is/am/are + v<sup>4</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + is/am/are + not + v<sup>4</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Is/am/are + sub + v<sup>4</sup> + obj +?*  
*WH + is/am/are + sub + v<sup>4</sup> + obj +?*

**Active:** *sub + is/am/are + v<sup>4</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + is/am/are + being + v<sup>4</sup> + by + sub*

He is writing a letter.

He is not writing a letter.

Is he writing a letter?

Why is he writing a letter?

He is writing a poem.

A poem is being written by him.

### Uses:

*We use the present continuous tense to show:*

➤ *things that are happening now, at the moment.*

What are you doing?

She's reading in the garden.

They're not standing in the rain.

He's doing his math homework now.

➤ *actions happening in a period around the present moment in time.*

Whose account are you working on?

She's studying hard for her final exam.

I am working on a new project.

I'm reading Austen's novel these days.

➤ *future plans and arrangements.*

They are coming to stay with us in September.

I'm going to give an interview on May 20.

What are you doing tomorrow afternoon?

I am not going to the party tonight.

Is he visiting his parents next weekend?

He is going to a concert this evening.

➤ *gradual change.*

The children are growing so fast.

The price of things is going up.

Levels of pollution present in the atmosphere are increasing.

The price of land is rising rapidly.

### Adverbs of time:

*We often use 'still, at present, at the moment, now, today, this week, this month, tomorrow, next week (for future arrangements), currently, Look!, Listen!, etc' with the present continuous tense.*

You are learning English now. You are not swimming now.

“Are you sitting?” “No, I'm not sitting. I'm standing.”

They are reading their books. They are not watching television.

What are you doing? Why aren't you doing your homework?

I am reading the book Tom Sawyer. I am not reading any books right now.

Are you working on any special projects at work?

I am drinking coffee at the moment.

Is he singing or dancing?

Look! An eagle is flying.

Listen! Music is playing.

Hurry up! The bus is coming.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Present Perfect Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + has /have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + has not /have not + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Has/have + sub + v<sup>3</sup> + obj +?*  
*WH + has/have + sub + v<sup>3</sup> + obj +?*

**Active:** *sub + has/have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + has/have + been + v<sup>3</sup> + by + sub*

He has written a letter.

He has not written a letter.

Has he written a letter?

Why has he written a letter?

He has written a letter.

A letter has been written by him.

### Uses:

*We use the present perfect tense to talk about:*

⇒ *happenings in the past that affect or explain the present situation.*

Diya looks upset. Has she failed the exam?

I can't pay the bus fare. I've lost my purse.

I've looked for my watch everywhere but I still can't find it.

Tina has discovered that the telephone isn't working.

The camera isn't in its usual place. Somebody has taken it away.

His father has been away, so he hasn't received his salary yet.

⇒ *our experiences.*

I have been to Pokhara.

I have never been to Dharan.

I think I have seen that movie before.

He has never travelled by plane.

⇒ *changes that have happened over a period of time.*

You have grown a lot since the last time I saw you.

The government has become more interested in arts education.

My English has really improved since I moved to Australia.

⇒ *accomplishments of individuals and humanity, without mentioning a specific time.*

Man has walked on the moon.

My brother has learned how to swim.

Doctors have cured many deadly diseases.

Tina has passed her Science test at the second attempt.

⇒ *an action which we expected has not happened.*

Ganesh has not finished his homework yet.

I have not met her yet.

### Adverbs of time:

*We can use the present perfect tense with 'already, just, recently, ever, never, once, many times, several times, before, so far, yet, etc'.*

I have read that book five times.

Have you read the book yet?

I think I have met her once before.

Nobody has ever climbed that mountain.

He has failed his driving test four times.

Have you made any holiday plans yet?

This is the third time I've visited Pokhara.

Up to now, I haven't found this book.

How long have you known Anna?

I've known her for a year by now.

So far, he has written ten letters to me.

I can't remember her name, though I have told it several times.

The value of this property has doubled in the last three years.

By now, she has read fourteen novels by Stephen King.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + has been/have been + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + has not been/have not been + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Has/have + sub + been + v<sup>1</sup> + obj + ?*

*WH + has/have + sub + been + v<sup>1</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + has been/have been + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Passive:**

He has been writing a letter.

He has not been writing a letter.

Has he been writing a letter?

Why has he been writing a letter?

He has been writing a letter.

(no passive construction in use)

### Uses:

*We use the present continuous tense to show:*

⇒ *We use the present perfect continuous tense to show that something started in the past and has continued up until now.*

Mandira has been teaching in this school for three years.

They have been talking for the last hour.

What have you been doing for the last 30 minutes?

Anil has been working on this project since May.

We have been waiting here for over two hours.

She has been chatting on the phone for the last half hour.

The police have been searching for the kidnapper for two weeks.

How long has the bus been stopping at the bus park?

Why has Nina not been attending the class for the last two weeks?

⇒ *We often use the words 'lately' or 'recently' with this tense.*

Recently, I have been feeling really tired.

She has been watching too much television lately.

Have you been exercising lately?

What have you been doing recently?

### Adverbs of time:

*We can use the present perfect continuous tense with 'lately, so far, by now, since, for an hour, for a week, for 5 years, etc'.*

He's been living here for 3 years.

I've been writing since morning.

They've been working hard lately.

How long have you been waiting?

I've been waiting for about an hour.

She has been working as a teacher for seven years.

They have been carrying out extensive repair work for three weeks in full swing.



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the simple present or present continuous tense.

- I hate living in Cherrapunjee because it..... a lot there. (rain)
- Don't forget to take your umbrella. It..... now. (rain)
- I'm sorry I can't hear what you said because everybody.....so loudly. (talk)
- I.....to work every day. (go)
- The sun.....in the east. (rise)
- The sun..... brightly and it's warm today. (shine)

7. Imran..... out of the window. Can you see him from here? (look)
8. Listen! Someone..... the piano. (play)
9. They..... TV in the evenings. (watch)
10. It..... dark. We'd better go home. (get)
11. Could you call a little later? We..... dinner. (have)
12. Please be quiet! The baby..... (sleep)
13. Is he a bus driver? No, he..... a taxi. (drive)
14. Bindhya can't come to the phone, she..... a shower in the bath. (have)
15. I..... for an important phone call. (wait)
16. I can't buy this dress. It..... too much. (cost)
17. Sadhana..... a dark gray suit today. (wear)
18. Every Monday, Ajay..... his son to football practice. (drive)



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the present perfect or present continuous tense.

1. A: I think the waiter has forgotten us. We.....(wait) here for over half an hour and nobody.....(take) our order yet.  
B: I think you're right.
2. A: How long.....(you, be) in Kathmandu?  
B: I have studied here for more than three years.
3. A: I.....(have) the same bike for more than ten years. I'm thinking about buying a new one.  
B: You'd better buy a second-hand bike.
4. A: Are you tired?  
B: Yes, .....just..... a lot of washing and cleaning. (do)
5. A: The floor is wet.  
B: Somebody.....just..... it. (mop)
6. A: You're waiting for somebody, aren't you?  
B: It is already 2 pm and I.....(wait) here for over an hour. If Kumar does not get here in the next five minutes, I am going to leave.



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the present continuous or present perfect continuous tense.

1. A: Where is Sunil?  
B: He.....(study) in the library for his Science test. In fact, he.....(study) Science for five days.
2. A: What is that sound?  
B: A car alarm .....(ring) somewhere down the street. It..... (ring) for more than twenty minutes.

3. A: I hope you feel better soon.  
B: Thanks. I.....(take, currently) some medicine, so I should feel better in a couple of days.
4. A: Deepa's English is really improving, isn't it?  
B: She.....(study) English grammar every day since she first arrived in Kathmandu.
5. A: How long have you been playing tennis?  
B: I.....(play) since high school.
6. A: Anjali, tell me a little bit about yourself.  
B: Well, I.....(work) in a travel agency for over three years.
7. A: Do you know Sudan?  
B: I know Sudan quite well. We.....(learn) French at the same institution at present.



**Writing Practice:** Write a possible answer to each question in the present perfect continuous tense.

- a. Why is Bhola at the gym club?  
*Because he has been doing exercise to lose his weight.*
- b. Why is Sunita so angry?  
*Because she has been waiting for her friend for three hours.*
- c. Why are you two so tired?  
Because we.....(work/field/3 hrs)
- d. Why are they so dirty?  
Because they.....(clean/room/2 hrs)
- e. Why is she so busy?  
Because.....(prepare/final exam/2 weeks)
- f. Why are their eyes red?  
Because.....(watch/TV/5 hrs)
- g. Why are they so exhausted?  
Because.....(climb/mountain/4 hrs)
- h. Why is he so fit?  
Because.....(do/ heavy exercise/3 yrs)
- i. Why is she a very good singer?  
Because.....(work/hard)
- j. Why is Mr. Sahani a competent teacher?  
Because.....(teach/10 yrs)
- k. Why would David make a good tourist guide?  
Because.....(travel/many years)
- l. Why does he always get high marks in exams?  
Because.....(work/hard)
- m. Why is Anu good at table tennis?  
Because.....(practise/5 yrs)



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Simple Past Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + v<sup>2</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + did not + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Did + sub + v<sup>1</sup> + obj +?*  
*WH + did + sub + v<sup>1</sup> + obj +?*

**Active:** *sub + v<sup>2</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + was/were + v<sup>3</sup> + by + sub*

He wrote a letter.

He did not write a letter.

Did he write a letter?

Why did he write a letter?

He wrote a letter.

A letter was written by him.

### Uses:

*We use the simple past tense to show:*

⇒ *finished events or situations with a past time reference.*

Last year I went to Nagarkot.

Anita met me an hour ago.

Last year, we travelled to Singapore.

Who invented the telescope?

She visited Kathmandu in 2001.

I didn't see a play yesterday.

Did you watch that movie last night?

Long ago there lived a king.

⇒ *past facts or generalizations or situations which are no longer true.*

He didn't like meat and fish before.

I studied Urdu when I was a child.

Deepa worked at the restaurant after school.

They never wore shorts; they wore pants.

When he was a child, he lived a very ascetic life.

Did you play a musical instrument when you were a kid?

⇒ *a series of completed actions in the past.*

He wrote a letter, put it in an envelope, put stamp on it and posted it.

She got off at the bus stop, called her friend and went with her to the hotel.

Yesterday he cleaned his room, made dinner, watched TV for 2 hours, and walked in the park.

She typed a couple of letters, made a couple of phone calls, had a cup of coffee and went to the bank.

⇒ *duration of any completed action which starts and stops in the past.*

We talked on the phone for thirty minutes.

I waited for Anjali for two hours.

They lived in Kathmandu for six years and then moved to Pokhara.

Shilpa studied French for three years.

### Adverbs of time:

*We often use the simple past tense with 'yesterday, last week, last year, an hour ago, a year ago, a long time ago, in 2001, etc'.*

It happened many years ago.

Columbus discovered America in 1492.

Atul came back last week.

I bought a new vacuum cleaner yesterday.

Dorje left two hours ago.

They were in England in 1998.

Pemba visited her twice last year.

When did you see him? - I saw him yesterday.

She waited for his call all evening yesterday, but he didn't call.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Past Continuous Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + was/were + v<sup>t</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + was/were + not + v<sup>t</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Was/were + sub + v<sup>t</sup> + obj + ?*  
*WH + was/were + sub + v<sup>t</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + was/were + v<sup>t</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + was/were + being + v<sup>3</sup> + by + sub*

He was writing a letter.

He was not writing a letter.

Was he writing a letter?

Why was he writing a letter?

He was writing a letter.

A letter was being written by him.

### Uses:

*We use the past continuous tense to talk about:*

⇒ *what was happening at a particular time in the past.*

This time yesterday, I was reading a book.

Yesterday at this time, I was sitting in the park.

What were you doing when the door bell rang?

This time last week we were visiting Pokhara.

We were jogging when we heard the news of the royal massacre.

We were watching TV at 3 o'clock yesterday.

⇒ *descriptions and background to an event in the past.*

When he got home, his sister was watching television.

I was eating dinner when there was a knock on the door.

The man was sitting on the bench. He was wearing a blue suit. He was reading a paper and eating biscuits.

The woman was in the kitchen. She was wearing an evening dress. Her son was sitting at a table and she was serving food.

When I walked into the park, several people were sitting there, some were talking on the phones, an old man was reading a novel, and some children were flying kites.

One fat lady was waving her hands.

⇒ *interrupted actions in the past.*

I was watching TV when she called.

When the phone rang, she was writing a letter.

While we were having the picnic, it started to rain.

What were you doing when the earthquake started?

While Mr. Chaudhary was sleeping last night, someone stole his car.

Shyam was waiting for us when we got off the plane.

While I was writing the email, the computer suddenly went off.

The telephone rang just as the meal was being served.

I was just joking when I said that.

When I arrived at the park, Milan was sitting on the bench with a paper.

⇒ *two actions in the same sentence that expresses the idea that both actions were happening at the same time. The actions are parallel.*

While I was reading, she was watching television.

Were you listening while he was talking?

I wasn't paying attention while I was writing the essay.

What were you doing while you were waiting?



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Past Perfect Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + had + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + had not + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Had + sub + v<sup>3</sup> + obj + ?*  
*WH + had + sub + v<sup>3</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + had + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + had + been + v<sup>3</sup> + by + sub*

He had written a letter.

He had not written a letter.

Had he written a letter?

Why had he written a letter?

He had written a letter.

A letter had been written by him.

### Uses:

➤ *The past perfect tense expresses the idea that something occurred before another action in the past. It can also show that something happened before a specific time in the past.*

After I had got a new job, I left the previous one.

The police had cleared the road before the rally approached.

By the time the police came, the unruly crowd had dispersed.

I did not recognize Dev because he had grown a beard.

We ran to the bus stop but the bus had already left.

I noticed that Jiya had left her book behind.

We soon remembered that we had seen the movie before.

The police found out who had stolen the bike.

I had only just put the phone when it rang again.

The grandfather suddenly recollected where he had hidden the money.

The teacher arranged extra classes for the students who had failed the term exams.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + had been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + had not been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Had + sub + been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj + ?*  
*WH + had + been + sub + v<sup>4</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + had + been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** (no passive structure)

He had been writing a letter.

He had not been writing a letter.

Had he been writing a letter?

Why had he been writing a letter?

He had been writing a letter.

### Uses:

➤ *We use the past perfect continuous tense to show that something started in the past and continued up until another time in the past.*

They had been talking for over an hour before I arrived.

How long had you been waiting to get on the bus?

Shilpa wanted to sit down because she had been standing all day at work.

She had been working in a hospital before she found a new job.

She had been frying some onions when she burnt her fingers.

➤ *We use the past perfect continuous tense before another action in the past to show cause and effect.*

Kabir was tired because he had been digging the field for three hours.

Bhim gained weight because he had been overeating.

Suman failed the final test because he had not been attending class.



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the simple past or past continuous tense.

1. Yesterday, while I was watching television, Ajeeta.....(call) me. She said she.....(call) me on her cell phone from Park Avenue. I asked her if she.....(wait) for somebody. She said that she.....(watch) a film shooting.
2. Last week Kunal.....(watch) a movie in a theatre. When I asked him if he.....(like) the movie, he said it was so boring that some of his friends.....(sleep, actually) in the hall, and some of his friends.....(play) games on their mobiles. He said that he.....(sleep, also) in the front seat.
3. Riya and her friends were in class. The teacher.....(teach) them Science. One of their friends.....(make) a phone call from class. Just then the teacher.....(yell), "Sanjay, are you making a phone call?" Sanjay.....(come) to attention at once. The teacher.....(send) him to the Principal's office.



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the simple past or past perfect tense.

1. The army.....(rescue) the child who had been trapped on the third floor of the burning building.
2. When I arrived home last night, I discovered that my wife.....(prepare, already) dinner for us.
3. By the time I got to the office, the meeting.....(begin, already) without me.
4. When I.....(turn) the radio on yesterday, I heard a song that was popular when I was in high school.
5. When Anish entered my room, I.....(not recognize) him because he.....(lose) so much weight and.....(grow) a beard. He looked totally different!
6. They.....(see) many pictures of the pyramids before they went to Egypt.



**Grammar Practice:** Using the words in brackets, complete the text below with the appropriate tenses.

**Simple Past / Past Continuous / Past perfect**

1. A: What.....you.....when the accident occurred? (do)  
B: I.....just.....along singing to myself. (walk)
2. A: What.....you.....when the light went out? (do)  
B: I.....to change a light bulb that had burnt out. (try)
3. A: What did you do after you.....the wallet full of money? (find)  
B: I immediately.....the owner. (call)
4. A: What did the doctor tell you?  
B: He said that I was very sick and I.....to take a complete rest. (need)
5. A: What were they doing when you.....there? (reach)  
B: They.....at the library for their final exam. (study)
6. A: What was your receptionist doing when you.....into your office? (walk)  
B: When I walked into my office, my receptionist.....on the phone with a customer. (talk)

7. A: What did you see when you.....the bazaar? (enter)  
 B: When I entered the bazaar, a couple of men.....over the price of a leather belt. (argue)  
 A: What did you do there?  
 B: I walked over to a man who.....fruit and bought a kilo of apples. (sell)



**Grammar Practice:** Using the words in brackets, complete the text below with the appropriate tenses.

**Simple Past / Past Continuous / Past Perfect/Past Perfect Continuous**

1. Actress Angelina Jolie was injured while she.....an action movie 'Salt'. (shoot)
2. After he.....his car, he cleaned the garage. (wash)
3. By the time I.....there, the concert had already begun. (get)
4. Geeta knew about the accident because she.....it. (witness)
5. Had you already learnt some English when you first.....to live here? (come)
6. He burnt the leaves after he.....them into a pile. (sweep)
7. I hastily closed the door but two cows.....on to the road. (walk/ already)
8. Nabin.....to a casino before last night. (be/never)
9. She.....stairs when she slipped and broke her chin. (climb)
10. She.....on the sofa when her dog barked and woke her up. (sleep)
11. Until yesterday, I.....that man in our office. (not see)
12. We were not able to get a hotel room because we.....in advance. (not book)
13. She only understood the movie because she.....the book. (read)
14. Shilpa called to say that she.....her diary behind. (forget)
15. The farmer.....ploughing only after the sun had set. (stop)
16. The man had escaped by the time the police.....to arrest him. (arrive)
17. He.....the joke before so he didn't laugh. (hear)
18. The search party entered the house after they.....that it was safe. (check)
19. They.....basketball when it started to rain. (play)
20. When I arrived there, one of the passengers.....in pain. (cringe)
21. They set off before the sun..... (rise)
22. Tony.....Biratnagar so well because he had visited the city several times. (know)
23. Which page had we reached when we.....adding last time? (stop)
24. He.....a ladder when a rung broke and he fell. (climb)
25. He.....me that he had never been there before. (tell)
26. I did not have any money because I.....my wallet. (lose)
27. After she.....her homework, she went to bed. (complete)
28. Before he cleaned the garage, he.....his car. (wash)
29. She.....all pages of the report by 10 o'clock yesterday. (type)
30. By the time he returned, I.....for seven hours. (work)
31. I had never seen such a beautiful place before I.....to Kashmir. (go)
32. Yesterday I watched a good old movie that I.....before. (not see)
33. She sobbed after she.....about my miserable condition. (hear)
34. Mother.....for an hour when she pricked her finger with the needle and it bled. (sew)
35. By 7 o'clock last night she had already been typing for 10 hours, so I.....her to rest for a while. (tell)



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Simple Future Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + shall/will + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + shall/will + not + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Shall/will + sub + v<sup>1</sup> + obj + ?*  
*WH + shall/will + sub + v<sup>1</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + shall/will + v<sup>1</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + shall be/will be + v<sup>3</sup> + by + sub*

He will write a letter.

He will not write a letter.

Will he write a letter?

When will he write a letter?

He will write a poem.

A poem will be written by him.

### Uses:

➔ *The simple future tense is used to talk about our hopes, expectations, intentions, predictions and forecasts.*

You'll enjoy the movie. I'm sure you'll.

I shall miss you when I leave Kathmandu.

They will find the place worth visiting.

I expect that it will rain this afternoon.

I hope it won't rain.

The weather will be sunny tomorrow.

Hurry up, or you'll miss the bus.

I'm tired. I think I'll take a rest.

➔ *The simple future tense often suggests that a speaker will do something voluntarily.*

I will send you the information when I get it.

Will you help me move this heavy table?

Will you make dinner?

I will not do your homework for you.

I'm really hungry. I'll make some sandwiches.

Look, here is a book stall. I'll buy some books for my brother.

He said to the teacher, "To make sure the classroom is clean, I will go and check it."

➔ *"Will" for expressing promising, offering and requesting*

I will call you when I arrive.

I promise I will not tell him about the surprise party.

I won't tell anyone your secret.

Will you buy me an ice-cream?

Will you help me, please?

### Adverbs of time:

*We use the simple future tense with 'tomorrow, in a few days, next week, in 2020, soon, tonight, until/unless/if + simple present, etc.'*

Soniya will go to Illam next year.

We will be home after seven.

We'll be glad to see you.

It will be dark soon.

I think he'll return next week.

I will probably see him in a few days.

He will not tell her about it.

She won't go to the party with us.

We will come back to Kathmandu again in 2010.

They won't be able to help us tonight.

She'll call him when he arrives.

I'll visit her if I have time.

They will wait until he returns.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Future Continuous Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + will be/shall be + v<sup>t</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + will not be/shall not be + v<sup>t</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Will/shall + sub + be + v<sup>t</sup> + obj + ?*

*WH + will/shall + sub + be + v<sup>t</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + will/shall + be + v<sup>t</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** (no passive structure)

He will be writing a letter.

He will not be writing a letter.

Will he be writing a letter?

Why will he be writing a letter?

He will be writing a letter.

### Uses:

*We use the future continuous tense to show:*

➤ *long-term activities in the future or ongoing action at a certain point in future.*

At this time tomorrow, they will be studying at the library.

At 8 pm tonight, Sita will be washing the dishes.

I will be watching TV when he arrives tonight.

This time next week I'll be visiting Pokhara.

He will be probably sleeping when you return.

I will be waiting for you at the bus stop when your bus arrives.

They will be working mainly in the science lab.

Get off the bus at Lagankhel; I'll be waiting for you there.

She will be working in London this time next year.

Next Sunday I shall be celebrating my birthday with my friends.

After school on Friday, I will be visiting the park with my friends.

Next Saturday morning, I will be visiting my uncle in his farm.

At 2 pm tomorrow, I will be performing a song on the stage.

When you come to the library, I'll be sitting by the central window.

I can't meet you tomorrow from 6 to 10; I'll be attending a conference.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Future Perfect Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** *sub + will have/shall have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Negative:** *sub + will not have/shall not have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Questions:** *Will/shall + sub + have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj + ?*

*WH + will/shall + sub + have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj + ?*

**Active:** *sub + will have/shall have + v<sup>3</sup> + obj*

**Passive:** *obj + will have/shall have + been + v<sup>3</sup> + sub*

He will have written a letter.

He will not have written a letter.

Will he have written a letter?

Why will he have written a letter?

He will have written a letter.

A letter will have been written by him.

### Uses:

➤ *The future perfect expresses the idea that something will occur before another action in the future. It can also show that something will happen before a specific time in the future.*

By the time we arrive, everybody will have gone.

By six o'clock, the sun will have set.

When do you think you will have finished your project work?

When you get this message, I will have left for Singapore.

By the time we meet again, we'll have moved to a new area.

By next month, his father will have received his promotion.

By the time I finish this course, I will have taken three term exams.

They will have completed the project before the deadline.

### Adverbs of time:

We use the future perfect tense with the time adverbials like *by the time*; *by 2015*, *by tomorrow*, *before*, *when* (in the meaning 'by the time'), etc.

By the time she returns, I will have finished my work on the report.

She will have typed the report by the time you return.

When he calls, I will have left already.

By tomorrow, he will have left London.

By 2050, scientists will have found the cure for cancer.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: The Future Perfect Continuous Tense

### Structures:

**Affirmative:** sub + will have been/shall have been+ v<sup>4</sup> + obj

**Negative:** sub + will not have been/shall not have been+ v<sup>4</sup> + obj

**Questions:** Will/shall + sub + have been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj + ?

WH + will/shall + sub + have been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj + ?

**Active:** sub + will have been/shall have been + v<sup>4</sup> + obj

**Passive:** (no passive structure)

He will have been writing a letter.

He will not have been writing a letter.

Will he have been writing a letter?

Why will he have been writing a letter?

He will have been writing a letter.

### Uses:

⇒ We use the future perfect continuous tense to show that something will continue up until a particular event or time in the future.

By the time you return, I will have been waiting here for 3 days.

When he finally reaches Dharan, Tom will have been driving for 10 hours.

By 2020, she will have been living in Canada for ten years.

They will have been talking for over an hour by the time Tina arrives.

You will only have been waiting for a few minutes when her plane arrives.

He will have been painting the mural for over six months by the time it is finished.

Goma will have been teaching in this school for more than two years by the time she leaves for Chitwan.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Be going to

### Uses:

⇒ 'Be going to' expresses that something is a plan. It expresses the idea that a person intends to do something in the future. It does not matter whether the plan is realistic or not.

He is going to spend his vacation in Dubai.

She is not going to spend her vacation in Singapore.

"When are we going to meet each other tonight?" "We are going to meet at 6 PM."

I'm going to be an actor when I grow up.

Michelle is going to begin medical school next year.

They are going to drive all the way to Alaska.

Who are you going to invite to the party?

"Who is going to make John's birthday cake?" "Anu is going to make John's birthday cake."



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the simple future or future continuous tense.

- A: Where is Tony going to meet us?  
B: He (wait).....for us when our bus arrives. I am sure he (stand).....on the platform when we get off there.
- A: You look tired, don't you?  
B: Oh, yes. I think I.....out tonight. (not go)
- A: Your Mum.....angry when she sees this mess. (be)  
B: I.....all this before Mum returns. (clean up)
- A: Where will you be from 4 pm to 6 pm? Can you meet me?  
B: Sorry, I can't. I.....a party then. (attend)
- A: What are you going to be doing next year at this time?  
B: I.....for a big law firm in Kathmandu. (work)
- A: Have you written a poem?  
B: Not yet? I.....do it tomorrow. (do)



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the simple future or future perfect tense.

- Mother: Do you think everything will be finished when I get back from the store?  
Daughter: Don't worry, Mum. By the time you get back, I.....  
(make) all the beds and.....(finish) washing the dishes.  
Mother: I hope so. I.....(return) around 6 o'clock.
- Anu: I can't believe how late we are! By the time we get to the dinner, everyone.....(finish, already) eating.  
Tina: It's your own fault. You took too long for the makeup.  
Anu: I couldn't get my hair to look right.  
Tina: Who cares? By the time we get there, everyone.....  
(left). Nobody.....(see, even) your hair.



**Grammar Practice:** Use the verbs in the brackets in the future perfect or future perfect continuous tense.

- By the time we get to Kirtipur this afternoon, we.....(walk) more than three kilometres. We are going to be exhausted.
- When Sadhana goes to Janakpur next month, she.....(visit) different places there for over two weeks.
- I have not completed my project work yet; however, I.....(finish) it by the time the term exam ends.
- Drive faster! If you don't hurry up, she.....(have) the baby by the time we get to the hospital.
- Deepa just called and said she would be here at 2 o'clock. By the time she gets here, we.....(wait)for her for three hours.
- Mohan just changed jobs again. If he keeps this up, he.....(change) jobs at least four or five times by the end of the year.
- Come over to my house around 4 o'clock. By then, I.....(complete) my essay and we can go to a park.
- I've been reading novels lately. By the end of this month, I.....(read) more than five novels.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Tense Contrast

### Simple present or present continuous

⇒ We use the simple present tense for facts, present affairs and permanent states, but the present continuous tense for unfinished or temporary actions, or to talk about trends and changes, or about situations happening now that are different from normal.

I live in Pokhara. (*This is my home. I live here permanently.*)

I am living in Pokhara with my friend. (*A temporary situation until I buy my own house.*)

Hot air rises. (*A scientific fact.*)

House prices are rising. (*A trend happening now.*)

He drives to work every day. (*His routine or habit.*)

He is walking to work this week. (*His car is being repaired.*)

⇒ Some verbs cannot be used in the present continuous tense. This is because they already suggest permanence.

→ Verbs of possession – own, have, belong

→ Verbs of the mind – believe, know, think, forget

→ Verbs of emotion – love, hate, detest.

→ Verbs of the senses – see, hear, smell, taste

→ Verbs of geographical location – lie

### Present perfect or present perfect continuous

⇒ We usually use the present perfect to talk about a single event or a short action, and the present perfect continuous for longer actions (activities).

Somebody has thrown water on her. (*Throwing is a short action. It takes short time.*)

They have been playing in the rain. (*Playing is a longer activity.*)

She has put on her dress.

He has been ironing his dress.

He has fallen in the river. Come and help him.

They have been digging the field for five hours.

⇒ We usually use the present perfect when the result is more important than the activity and the present perfect continuous when the activity is more important than the result.

He has been painting the wall. He is covered in paint. (*It doesn't talk about the completion or the result of the action.*)

He has painted the wall. It looks beautiful now. (*It talks about the completion of the action, and the result.*)

⇒ The present perfect stresses the result of some activity or complete actions, while the present perfect continuous stresses the duration of this activity before the result or incomplete action.

I've been reading this novel for two days. (*I'm still reading it.*)

I've read this novel. (*It's complete.*)

He has been living here for years.

He has lived here for years.

She has been sleeping for 2 hours already.

She has slept for 2 hours already.

We have been reading many books lately.

We have read many books lately.

➤ *The verbs that are not used in the continuous tenses will be used in the present perfect instead of the present perfect continuous.*

I've known him for a year by now.

(I've been knowing him for a year now.)

They have had guitar lessons since Monday.

(They have been having guitar lessons since Monday.)

He has loved her ever since they met.

➤ *However, in some cases the difference between the two tenses can be big:*

What have you been doing since I left?

What have you done since I left?

I've read Muna Madan. (I'm not reading now.)

I've been reading Muna Madan. (I'm still reading.)

### **Present perfect or simple past**

➤ *If we use the simple past, we consider the event or events as finished and in the past. With the present perfect, there is a connection to the present.*

I have lived here for five years. (I still live here.)

I lived here for two years when I was a child. (I don't live here now.)

I have seen three movies this week. (This week has not finished yet.)

I saw three movies last week. (Last week is finished.)

➤ *The present perfect is often used when giving recent news and the simple past is used when giving older information.*

Suman has failed the term Exam again. (This is new information.)

Suman failed the term Exam last year. (This is old information.)

➤ *The present perfect is used when the time is not specific and the simple past is used when the time is clear.*

I have seen that movie already. (We don't know when.)

I saw that movie on Thursday. (We know exactly when.)

They have passed the test. (They do not know when.)

They passed the test two years ago. (They know exactly when.)

➤ *The present perfect tense is in some cases interchangeable with the simple present tense after the conjunctions 'when, after, before, as soon as, until, etc' when referring to the present or future.*

When I've finished my painting, I'll show it to you.

She'll go for shopping after she has cooked food.

As soon as I've received the money, I'll give your share.

You can't watch this channel until you've paid extra money for it.

Don't try to do it before the sun has risen.



**Grammar Practice:** Choose the correct forms of verbs from the brackets.

1. He.....in Dharan in 2003. (has been, was)
2. Kunal.....Kathmandu. (has never visited, never visited)
3. She.....in this school since 2006. (has worked, worked)
4. Wait! I.....my story yet. (haven't finished, didn't finish)
5. They.....this movie four or five times already. (have seen, saw)
6. I.....to her just a minute ago. (have talked, talked)
7. She.....a lot of money yesterday. (has spent, spent)
8. He.....a lot of work in the past three weeks. (has done, did)
9. He.....a letter to the Principal last week. (has written, wrote)

### Present continuous/simple future/going to

⇒ We use 'going to' when we have the intention to do something before we speak or we have already made a decision before speaking.

I have won a lottery. I am going to buy a new TV.

We're not going to see my mother tomorrow.

When are you going to go on holiday?

⇒ We often use 'going to' to make a prediction about the future. Our prediction is based on evidence. We are saying what seems sure to happen. Here are some examples:

The sky is very black. It is going to rain.

It's 8.30! You're going to miss the train!

I crashed the company car. My boss isn't going to be very happy!

⇒ The present continuous is used for future arrangements and future certainties.

I've just finished making the travel arrangements! I'm meeting Aryan at the bus stop at five o'clock and we're leaving on the 5:30 bus.

I'm seeing the dentist tomorrow sharp at six. I have already made an appointment.

⇒ Simple future is used for promises, spontaneous decisions and future uncertainties.

I shall buy you a nice dress next month. It's my promise.

I think I'll go to Pokhara by bus.

Maybe they will arrive here tomorrow.



### Grammar Practice: Supply the correct tense of the verbs given in the brackets.

- I will ask him about his plans when he.....back. (come)
- I'll wait here until he.....up. (wake)
- As soon as they.....in, lock the door. (get)
- I'm going to clean the room after I.....my bike. (wash)
- I'm sure he.....here soon. (be)
- She wants to know when you.....her books. (return)
- They.....(bath),.....(dress) and.....(feed) the baby. Then it was sick!
- The film.....(begin) before they.....(arrive).
- When she.....(arrive) at the airport, the plane.....(go) so she.....(have to) sleep in the departure lounge.
- Her hair.....(grow) too long so the hairdresser.....(have to) cut it.
- She.....(be) a famous model but then she.....(become) an actress.
- The musicians.....(practise) the concert for 5 days before they.....(be) ready to play.
- John and Jane.....(not see) each other for years when they.....(meet) by chance in the street.
- The patient.....(be) ill for years before the doctors.....(discover) the cure.
- We.....in Delhi 5 months ago. (arrive)
- They.....in Pokhara for five days now. (stay)
- We have.....each other for ages. (not see)
- The tour group.....(travel) different parts of India. They're in Dubai now.
- I.....(work) in this school for 15 years. I know everyone.



## Test Yourself

1

Put the verb in brackets in the correct form:

1. Yesterday evening at 11.30 we..... at the party. (dance)
2. Pukar..... 20 pages so far. (read)
3. Sudha..... here between 2003 and 2006. (work)
4. Anna's father..... a car next year. (buy)
5. .... she..... tomato juice? No, she doesn't. (like)
6. Please don't make so much noise. I..... (study).
7. I..... quite a lot of mountains. (climb)
8. In 2001, Kabir..... China with a group of friends. (visit)
9. In all his career, Himesh never..... one day of work. (miss)
10. It..... a lot in November. (not rain)
11. John is playing a game of tennis. He..... for 2 hours. (play)
12. Last year Nina's uncle..... all over Australia. (travel)
13. Kumar..... me anything two days ago. (not give)
14. Mum can't come to the phone because she..... a shower now. (have)
15. Mary is still watching TV. She..... TV all day. (watch)
16. His uncle..... engaged since July. (be)
17. What..... you..... since August? (do)
18. Anant..... the middle child in his family. (be)
19. He..... a lot in his childhood. (suffer)
20. Last year some students..... a terrible case of the flu. (have)
21. Linda..... already..... her car. (park)
22. We..... in an apartment before. (stay)
23. Listen! Somebody..... upstairs. (come)
24. He..... us for six months by the end of next month. (teach)
25. The teacher..... English since the beginning of this lesson. (speak)



## Test Yourself

2

Put the verb in brackets in the correct form:

1. The bus..... at 6.25 a.m. (leave)
2. You look tired! Yes I..... very hard. (work)
3. The weather..... horrible yesterday. (be)
4. The world population..... at the rate of 2.5% every year. (increase)
5. They..... the work yet. (not complete)
6. This house..... for several days. (not clean)
7. In the future, people..... more modern houses and flying cars. (have)
8. Binod..... to the cinema yesterday. (go)
9. We..... down at a free table and waited for the waiter. (sit)
10. What..... you..... at nine o'clock yesterday? (do)
11. He..... to Pokhara many times. (be)
12. Suman always..... pizza in expensive restaurants. (eat)
13. I..... three chapters by 3 o'clock. (revise)
14. Nowadays the water resources..... polluted. (get)
15. I..... her at the museum last Sunday. (see)
16. We..... the same car for twelve years. (have)
17. Sabnam..... the same table for ten minutes. (wipe)
18. I..... him for a long time. (know)
19. Look! Somebody..... water on the floor. (spill)

20. At present, many scientists.....on a cure against AIDS. (work)
21. What.....you.....next week? (do)
22. “Were you working yesterday?” “Yes, I.....all day.” (work)
23. ....he.....to the cinema everyday? (go)
24. We.....tickets for the football match on Saturday. Do you want to go? (buy)
25. This room was white. Now it is blue. He.....it. (paint)
26. We.....lunch at the moment. (have)
27. Angela put some water in the coffee pot. She.....(notice) a leak in the pot.
28. The police asked the boy why he.....the money. (steal)
29. Somebody.....my keys. They are not on the table. (steal)
30. The summer vacation.....on the 15<sup>th</sup> of February. (begin)
31. You arrived 2 days ago. You are going to leave next Sunday. By the time you leave, you.....9 days here. (spend)
32. Last week, I met an old friend of mine. We.....each other for five years. (not see)



### Test Yourself



#### Put the verb in brackets in the correct form:

1. The teacher.....(already left, had already left, has left already) the class.
2. Urmila.....(was writing, had written, wrote) a letter when I saw her in the room.
3. We generally.....(went, go, gone) for jogging in the morning.
4. When I last saw you, you.....(are thinking, were thinking, have thought) of moving to Dharan.
5. I asked him what he.....before his father came.( had be done, has been done, had done)
6. My birthday.....on a Saturday this year. (is falling, will fall, falls)
7. She always.....great care of her books. (takes, is taking, has taken)
8. When I pushed him, he.....(was falling, fell, fallen) there.
9. Vivek.....(is painting, has painted, was painting) his bicycle. It looks nice.
10. We.....learning English for the last seven years. (have been, were, will have been)
11. She has been painting the walls for three hours. She.....(has finished, had finished, hasn't finished) it yet.
12. The school.....its silver jubilee next year. (will celebrate, celebrated, has been celebrating)
13. I.....on holiday three weeks ago. (am going, went, go)
14. In my childhood, I usually.....(left, was leaving, had left) the school at midday.
15. In three hours my father.....(will arrive, will have arrived, will be arriving) home.
16. Listen! Someone.....(is singing, sings, will sing)
17. At this time tomorrow, I.....(shall watch, shall be watching, shall have watched) a movie on television.
18. Look, the children.....(is playing, are playing, were playing)
19. I.....a haircut once a month. (have, will have, am having)
20. By the time we reached home, it.....(will have, had, has) been dark.
21. When the bus arrived, he.....on it. (got, had got, was getting)
22. When the bus arrived, we.....(were getting, had got, got) on it.
23. I.....(feel, am feeling, has been feeling) cold at present.
24. Sunita.....her father yet. (did not see, has not seen, will not see)
25. After he .....(had taken, took, takes) meat, he paid the bill.



## Test Yourself

4

Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct alternatives from the brackets:

1. We..... all that corn by the end of the year. (have eaten, will have eaten, will be eating)
2. "What do you do on your days off?" "I do nothing. I..... in bed all day." (was lying, lay, lie)
3. When I first met her, she..... in the park. (sat, was sitting, will be sitting)
4. They..... in the field. That is why they are all covered with mud. (worked, have been working, will be working)
5. I..... him for three years. I wonder where he is. (have not been seeing, have not seen, did not see)
6. Buses to Pokhara..... my house every hour. (pass, will pass, passed)
7. Can I borrow your book or you..... it at the moment? (read, are reading, will be reading)
8. I..... my photograph taken tomorrow. (have, will have, have had)
9. My mother usually does the shopping, but I..... it today as she isn't well. (am doing, will have done, do)
10. By next winter they..... a lot of money. (will earn, will have earned, had earned)
11. When I arrived at the stadium, the players had just entered the ground and the audience..... (had clapped, were clapping, are clapping)
12. She's on a diet. She..... nothing but bananas for the last month. (has been eating, was eating, ate)
13. My mother..... some onions when the light went out. (fried, was frying, has fried)
14. I..... a new dress. Come and look at it. (bought, have bought, will buy)
15. They..... this work in two hours. (will be finishing, will have finished, will finish)
16. Binod is not working now; he..... TV. (watches, was watching, is watching)
17. I..... for you at the bus stop when you get off the bus. (will wait, will be waiting, have been waiting)
18. It is a lovely day. The sun..... and the birds are singing. (shines, is shining, has been shining)
19. Someone..... at the door. Shall I answer it? (is knocking, knocks, knocked)
20. Who..... to on the telephone as I came in? (are you talking, were you talking, will you be talking)
21. Amit usually wears black dresses but when I last saw him he..... a red dress. (wore, wears, was wearing)
22. She..... this book by tomorrow evening. After that, you can borrow it. (will be finishing, will have finished, will finish)
23. "What..... now?" "He is brushing his teeth." (Mohan is doing, does Mohan do, is Mohan doing)
24. Pemba..... in Dharan for five years and then went to Kathmandu. (lived, has lived, has been living)
25. Mr. Sahani writes several stories. He..... just..... a fairy tale. (has finished, had finished, will have finished)
26. "The newspaper....., hasn't it?" "Yes, Suman is reading it." (came, has come, will come)
27. It..... for a week now. There'll be a big flood soon. (was raining, has been raining, is raining)
28. His father..... home at 8.00 every day for work. (is leaving, leaves, has left)



Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct forms of verbs from the brackets:

1. I..... a little money in my wallet. (have, am having, has)
2. Anu..... (has done, has been doing, is doing) her homework for 3 hours.
3. I..... him since I met him at school. (know, knew, have known)
4. When Suren came home, he was carrying five fish. He..... all day. (was fishing, will be fishing, had been fishing)
5. She has been writing an article for an hour. She..... two paragraphs so far. (writes, has been writing, has written)
6. The phone..... three times while we were doing our homework. (rings, rang, will ring)
7. The poor harvest..... prices to rise sharply last year. (caused, is caused, will cause)
8. The Principal..... these boys smoking in the canteen. (catch, catching, caught)
9. I..... him since Monday. (does not see, did not see, have not seen)
10. Take the umbrella. It..... outside. (is raining, rain, raining)
11. The bank..... a branch in a new shopping centre last month. (open, opened, will open)
12. At 3 pm yesterday I..... (was washing, washed, had been washing) for two hours.
13. Be quick. The police..... (is chasing, are chasing, chased) us.
14. I..... (prepare, is preparing, was preparing) dinner when the telephone rang.
15. Before the sun..... (sank, had sunk, has sunk) behind the horizon, we had completed our work.
16. By the time the policeman came, the thieves..... (ran, had run, will have run) away.
17. By the time he comes here, it..... (had, has, will have) been very late.
18. When the door bell rang, I..... (am bathing, was bathing, bathe)
19. The police siren..... to wail in the street last night. (begin, began, will begin)
20. When I saw them, they..... (are dancing, have been dancing, were dancing)
21. My son has booked an air ticket. He..... (will fly, flies, is flying) to Delhi tomorrow.
22. Neha..... (fell, was falling, had fallen) asleep when she was reading.
23. While we woke up, it..... outside. (will snow, is snowing, was snowing)
24. Sabnam..... certain to win the competition. (is looking, looks, will look)
25. A boy is hanging on a mango tree. He..... (will have fall, is going to fall, falls) down.
26. After he..... his dinner, he drank a cup of coffee. (was eating, eat, had eaten)



Supply correct forms of tenses in the blank spaces to complete these dialogues:

Susan : Hi, Rebina. I..... (not see) you at the party on Wednesday.

- Rebina : Hello, Susan. I.....(not come) there on Wednesday. I  
 .....(not feel) well, so I.....(decide) to go to the doctor.
- Susan : Oh! .....(be) it serious?
- Rebina : No, the doctor.....(examine) me and.....(tell) me I  
 .....(have) the flu. He.....(prescribe) some medicine  
 and.....(tell) me to go home and rest.
- Susan : .....you.....(stay) home all day last Wednesday?
- Rebina : No, only in the morning. I.....(have) to work in the afternoon.  
 Now I'm pretty fine.
- Susan : I'm happy to hear that. Well, Rebina, I have to rush now. See you later. Take  
 care.
- Rebina : You too. Bye.



### Test Yourself



Supply correct forms of tenses in the blank spaces to complete these dialogues:

- A: Why.....she.....so fast? (walk)

B: Because she is in a hurry. She.....to catch the bus. (want)
- A: My mother never.....(cook) meat. She is a vegetarian, but today she  
 .....(cook) mutton for lunch.

B: Really!
- A: Anita never.....(eat) her breakfast in the morning, so her mother  
 often.....(get) angry with her.

B: That's really not good! She should stop doing that.
- A: Do you know what you want to do after you.....(pass) your SEE?

B: After I.....(pass) my SEE, I.....(go) to Kathmandu to  
 study Science.
- A: What are you going to do tomorrow after school?

B: I.....(meet) some friends at the park. We.....(go) to  
 watch a movie. Would you like to come along?

A: No thanks! My sister is sick and I.....(take) her to the dentist.

B: We.....(be, probably) at the park until 5 o'clock. Why don't you  
 join us later?

A: Sounds good! I.....(see) you around 5:30.

# Conditional

Read the sentences in the speech bubbles:

What do you get if you mix red and blue?



If I mix red and blue, I get purple.



What happens if you heat ice?

If we heat ice, it melts.

What would you do if you won the lottery?



If I won the lottery, I would travel abroad.



What happens if nobody comes to the party?



If nobody comes to the party, we'll give all the food to the orphanage.



What would have happened if Aman had got a job in Kathmandu?



If Aman had got a job in Kathmandu, he wouldn't have come to Pokhara. He would have settled in Kathmandu. He didn't get a job and he is not in Kathmandu now, he is in Pokhara.



→ Sentences containing conditional clauses like *if*, *unless* and *provided that* are called conditional sentences. They express four types of conditions and each type has different structures and meanings.

Types	Meanings	Examples
Zero	<i>always real and possible</i>	If I mix red and blue, I get purple. If we heat ice, it melts.
First	<i>possible situations in the present or future</i>	If nobody comes to the party, we'll give all the food to the orphanage.
Second	<i>unlikely but possible situations in the present or in the future</i>	If I won the lottery, I would travel abroad.
Third	<i>unreal situations in the past</i>	If Aman had got a job in Kathmandu, he wouldn't have come to Pokhara.



**Listening Practice:** Repeat these sentences after your teacher.

- a. If I win, it will be a dream come true.
- b. If you don't water plants, they die.
- c. If you heat ice, it melts.
- d. If you like it, you can keep it.
- e. If you call me at nine, I'll be in.
- f. When water boils, it turns to steam.
- g. If I were you, I would not do that.
- h. If you wake up before me, give me a call.
- i. Work hard if you want to pass your exam.
- j. If I won the lottery, I would buy you a present.
- k. If Imran changed his job, he might be happier.
- l. If you can't answer the question, leave a blank.
- m. If you come to Pokhara, go boating on Phewa Lake.
- n. Unless we unite, our enemies will defeat us.
- o. If Milan had enough money, he would buy a motorbike.
- p. If Sabnam studied for exams, she would get better grades.
- q. If she'd taken the medicine, she'd have felt much better sooner.
- r. If we had caught that train, we'd have arrived on time!
- s. If he had known the answer, he would have told us.
- t. If a equals to b and b equals to c, it follows that a equals to c.
- u. If you lend this book to me, I'll give it back to you next Monday.
- v. Unless something unexpected happens, I'll see you tomorrow.
- w. Everything will be all right provided we keep patience.
- x. Unless they worked hard, they would never pass the exam.
- y. What will you do if he refuses to come with you?
- z. If Anu had gone to the store, she would have bought an ice-cream.

**Now write the correct letters:**

<i>simple present, simple present</i>	b,
<i>simple present, imperatives</i>	
<i>simple present, will/can/may/shall + v<sup>1</sup></i>	a,
<i>simple past, would/could/should/might + v<sup>1</sup></i>	
<i>past perfect, would/could/might + have + v<sup>3</sup></i>	

**Now look at these examples:**

If I mix red and blue, I get purple.

↑  
 Dependent clause  
 Subordinate clause  
 If-clause

↑  
 Independent clause  
 Main clause

If I won the lottery, I would travel abroad.  
 I would travel abroad if I won the lottery.

If nobody comes to the party, we'll give all the food to the orphanage.  
 We'll give all the food to the orphanage if nobody comes to the party.

➡ Use a comma (,) when if-clause comes before the independent clause.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Types and Uses

Generally conditional clauses contain **if**, **unless** and **provided that**. Here are the general structures of conditional sentences:

Types	Uses	Structures and examples
<b>Zero</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➔ It expresses cause and effect.</li> <li>➔ The time is now or always.</li> <li>➔ The situation is real and possible.</li> <li>➔ It is used to make statements about the real world, and often refers to general truths, such as scientific facts.</li> </ul>	<p><i>simple present, simple present</i></p> <p>If you heat water, it boils. Plants die if you don't water them. Ice floats if you drop it in water. Wood doesn't burn if there is no air. If it rains, the grass gets wet. Iron rusts if it gets wet. If it's a day off, I sleep late.</p>
<b>First</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➔ It shows a simple possible condition.</li> <li>➔ The possibility expressed in the main clause is a real one.</li> <li>➔ It refers to something happening in the present or future.</li> </ul>	<p><i>simple present, will//shall/can/may + v<sup>1</sup></i></p> <p>If he meets me, I will help him. He will dance if we request him. You'll be sick unless you stop eating spicy food. I'll be there at nine, unless the bus is late. Provided that he finishes his studies, he will find an excellent job.</p> <p><i>simple present, imperatives</i></p> <p>If you want to pass the test, work hard. If you need any help, meet me tomorrow. If you wake up before me, give me a call. Press the button if you want a receipt. If you want to leave a message, speak after the tone.</p>
<b>Second</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➔ It shows a doubtful condition.</li> <li>➔ The possibility expressed in the main clause is unreal or doubtful.</li> <li>➔ It also expresses hypothetical conditions.</li> </ul>	<p><i>simple past, would//could/might + v<sup>1</sup></i></p> <p>If he met me, I would help him. If they invited me, I could come. He would dance if we requested him. If I were a bird, I would fly high in the sky. Unless he was very ill, he would be at work. If I were you, I would not do that. If she studied for exams, she would get better grades.</p>
<b>Third</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➔ It shows unfulfilled conditions.</li> <li>➔ The condition was possible only in the past and there is no possibility of it being fulfilled now.</li> <li>➔ It expresses regrets or repentance.</li> </ul>	<p><i>past perfect, would//could/might + have+ v<sup>3</sup></i></p> <p>If he had met me, I would have helped him. If they had invited me, I could have come. He would have danced if we had requested him. I wouldn't have phoned him unless you'd suggested it. If we had caught the first bus, we'd have arrived on time. If she'd taken the medicine, she'd have felt much better sooner. If she had studied for exams, she would have got better grades.</p>



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Various Structures of Conditional Sentences

### ➤ Positive conditions

He'll do it if you pay him.  
 If she asked me, I would help her.  
 If you like it, you can keep it.  
 If she knew the answer, she would tell us.

### ➤ Negative conditions

I wouldn't eat that food unless I was really hungry.  
 She would be here by now unless she was stuck in the traffic.  
 If you don't water plants, they die.  
 Unless you buy a ticket, you won't be allowed in.

### ➤ Interrogative conditions

Does Homer get angry if you forget to feed him?  
 Would it hurt the car if you put apple juice in the gas tank?  
 What happens to your computer if you leave it on all night?  
 What would happen if you put apple juice in the gas tank?  
 What will you do if he refuses to give you a rise?

### ➤ Had + subject + past participle (Third Type)

Had the rescue crew found him earlier, they could have saved his life.  
 Had you told me about your problems, this disaster would not have happened.  
 Had I saved my money, I would have bought a house.  
 Had they caught the first bus, they would not have been late.



### Speaking Practice: Ask and answer the following questions.

What would you do ... ?  
 .....if you had a headache?  
 .....if you had a 100 degree fever?  
 .....if you were in Pokhara now?  
 .....if you won the lottery?  
 .....if a dog bit your friend?  
 .....if you lost the key to your room?



### Grammar Practice: Write the sentences with the 'If' clause. (second type)

- Anita likes toys but she doesn't have one. She doesn't have enough money.  
If she had the money, .....
- Puran wants to go out but it's raining. He doesn't have an umbrella.  
If he had an umbrella, .....
- Geeta is hungry. She doesn't have money.  
If she had money, .....
- Suman wants to take photos but he doesn't have a camera.  
If he had a camera, .....
- Atul wants to type his letter but he doesn't have a computer.  
If he had a computer, .....
- Bipen wants go out but he is sick.  
If he were not sick , .....



## Test Yourself

1

### Choose the correct forms of verbs given in the brackets:

1. If we.....by bus, it will be cheaper. (go, went, will go)
2. If you put ghee in the sun, it.....(melt, melts, will melt)
3. Let's go to the restaurant if your pocket.....full. (was, is, be)
4. If it....., the boys won't play cricket. (rains, rained, had rained)
5. Monica, let's go to the park if you.....in leisure. (be, are, were)
6. If it....., the children will not go for a walk. (rains, rained, had rained)
7. I would fly to you if I.....a bird. (have, was, were)
8. If I.....a ticket, I'll go to the concert. (get, got, had gotten)
9. I.....the police if I were you. (will call, would call, would have called)
10. If you like, you.....for two days. (can stay, could stay, stayed)
11. I'd go to a dentist if I.....a toothache. (have, had, will have)
12. What would you do if it.....? (rain, rained, had rained)
13. If you boil water, it.....into steam. (change, changes, will change)
14. If Imran.....earlier, he would have met Tina. (come, had come, came)
15. If I.....Anu, I would tell her about our plan. (meet, met, had met)
16. If Rohan.....me, I will come. (had called, called, calls)
17. Ice.....into water if it is heated. (changes, changed, will change)
18. If Deepa.....the exam, she will not come to school. (fails, failed, fail)
19. I would be punished if they.....me. (catch, had caught, caught)
20. Had he gone there, he.....Rajesh. (would meet, would have met, will meet)
21. If I were a teacher, I.....not punish students. (will, would, would have)
22. What would you do if you.....a million dollars? (have, had, will have)
23. He.....the job if the salary was better. (would take, would have taken, will take)
24. He'd have caught the train if he.....(hurried, had hurried, will hurry)
25. I.....you my bicycle if you need it. (can lend, would lend, would have lent)



## Test Yourself

2

### Choose the correct forms of verbs given in the brackets:

1. If Atul.....a teacher, he would teach us well. (is, were, had been)
2. If I listen to classical music, I.....good poems. (can write, could write, could have written)
3. If I were you, I.....to Peter's party. (would not go, will not go, would not have gone)
4. If he were my friend, I.....him to my birthday party. (will invite, would invite, would have invited)
5. If I find your mobile, I.....it to the office. (will take, would take, would have taken)
6. If it had been warmer, we.....swimming. (would have gone, will have gone, had gone)
7. If it had not rained, the children.....played outside. (will have, would have, had)
8. If it was not so late, we.....a game of chess. (will play, would play, will have played)



Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct alternatives from the brackets:

1. Your room.....much tidier if you vacuum it twice a week. (will look, looked, looks)
2. If I.....the film in the cinema, I wouldn't have watched it on TV again. (saw, had seen, see)
3. If we.....the book, we would have understood the film. (read, had read, will have read)
4. The criminal.....the death penalty if he was found guilty. (was given, would be given, will be given)
5. If my uncle.....me the way to his office, I would not have arrived so late. (tell, told, had told)
6. They.....on time if they hadn't missed the train. (may arrive, might arrive, might have arrived)
7. They would have paid less if they.....the tickets yesterday. (booked, would book, had booked)
8. I.....walked home if my bicycle had not been stolen. (will not have, would not have, had not)
9. If Rita forgets her homework, the teacher.....her a low mark. (will give, would give, would have given)
10. I.....geography if I got admission in this college. (will study, would study, would have studied)
11. If she.....this question correctly, she will get an extra point. (answers, answered, had answered)
12. If Pemba does not buy this lottery ticket, his friends.....angry with him. (will be, would be, would have been)
13. If Kumar had not cheated at the test, his teacher.....phoned his father. (will not have, would not have, had not)
14. If he were old enough, he.....in the school basketball team. (can play, could play, could have played)
15. Would you go out more often if you.....to do so much in the house? (don't have, didn't have, will not have)
16. If the police had not stopped me, I.....you in time. (will reach, would reach, would have reached)
17. You would have had no trouble at school if you.....your homework. (would have done, had done, did)
18. If they had waited for another ten minutes, they.....the pop star. (will have seen, would have seen, had seen)
19. If she does not read the novel, she.....the literature test. (will not pass, would not pass, would not have passed)
20. If we surf the Internet, we.....a lot of information about Swine Flu. (find, will find, would find)
21. We would have gone to the National Park if we.....in Chitwan. (would have stayed, stayed, had stayed)
22. If the boys.....the bus to school, they would have arrived on time. (take, took, had taken)
23. If I.....in England, my English would be more excellent now. (were, am, had been)
24. If they had used new batteries, their camera.....correctly. (will have worked, would have worked, had worked)

25. Mina would have watered the plants if she..... at home. (stay)
26. If you eat too much junk food, you..... weight. (not lose)
27. My sister..... angry if I turn on the music too loud. (be)
28. Remo might have convinced his mother to see the doctor if he..... to her. (talk)
29. Suman will walk to school if he..... the bus. (miss)
30. Riya..... that jacket if it was a bit cheaper. (buy)
31. She..... the whole day if she hadn't stayed up late last night. (yawn)
32. If we take the bus, we..... in time. (not arrive)
33. Shreya will answer the phone if her mother..... busy in cooking. (be)
34. If you wait a minute, I..... with you. (come)
35. Susan could have worked as a model if she..... taller. (be)
36. If you..... this bottle, it would not break. (drop)
37. The boys would have won the match if they..... regularly. (practise)
38. If we....., we would catch the bus. (hurry)
39. The car will be repaired if somebody..... it there. (take)
40. If you..... a little lemon, the soup would have tasted excellent. (add)
41. The children would be happy if he..... them English. (teach)
42. If you..... the young boy this stick, he'd hurt himself. (give)
43. My parents would have bought this house if the man..... it to someone else. (not sell)
44. The window..... if the children had not been playing football in the garden. (not break)
45. Maria could understand the text if her teacher..... the important sentences. (mark)



### Test Yourself



Put the verb in brackets in the correct form:

Sabin : I don't think I will lose my weight.

Rohan : I can guarantee that you.....(lose) your weight quite quickly if you eat less and do more exercise.

Sabin : That's easier said than done. If I.....(be) a strong willed person, I might find dieting a lot easier.

Rohan : You can do it if you.....(keep) yourself busy all the time. Why don't you find a job for yourself?

Sabin : If I.....(not put) on so much weight, I.....(find) a job, and even my girlfriend wouldn't have left me. Now I am alone and jobless.

Rohan : Come on! Don't get so depressed. If I were you, I.....(join) a gym club.

Sabin : Actually, I don't want to go to a gym club alone. Well, if you.....(come) with me, I'll join a gym club tomorrow.

Rohan : OK, then, let's start from tomorrow.

Sabin : All right.

# Prepositions

## Read the text:

FIFA stands **for** Federation International de Football Association. It was founded **in** Paris **on** May 21<sup>st</sup>, 1904. The FIFA World Cup is the world's largest single-sport event. Except **in** 1942 and 1946, because **of** World War II, the World Cup event has taken place every four years **since** 1930.

The first World Cup was held **in** Uruguay in 1930. Jules Rimet, the third president **of** FIFA, takes the credit **for** the idea **of** gathering the world's best national football teams **to** decide the world champions.

The first World Cup trophy was designed **by** the French sculptor Abel Lafleur, who created Jules Rimet statuette **with** gold **in** a base of semi-precious stones. Jules Rimet Cup was awarded to Brazil after its third World Cup triumph **in** Mexico **in** 1970. **In** 1983 Jules Rimet Cup was stolen **in** Brazil and could not be recovered. The second official World Cup trophy has been **in** use **since** 1974. Nowadays the winners **of** the World Cup are awarded a replica of the trophy.

**Of** the 18 tournaments held, seven nations have won the title. Brazil are the only team that have played **in** every tournament and have won the World Cup five times. Both Germany and Italy have won four titles so far but Germany are the current champions. The other former champions are Uruguay, winners **of** the inaugural tournament, and Argentina, **with** two titles each, and England, Spain and France **with** one title each.

The most recent FIFA World Cup was held **in** Brazil **in** 2014. The next World Cup will be held **in** Russia, **in** 2018, and the 2022 World Cup will be held **in** Qatar.



FIFA WORLD CUP  
Brasil



FIFA WORLD CUP  
RUSSIA 2018

*The words **at, in, of, on, to**, etc are examples of prepositions. A preposition shows the relationship of the idea expressed in the prepositional phrase to the ideas expressed in the rest of the sentence. Here is the list of frequently used prepositions:*

aboard	about	above	across	after	against	along
amid	among	around	at	before	behind	below
beneath	beside	besides	between	beyond	by	down
during	except	for	from	in	inside	into
near	of	off	on	onto	opposite	outside
over	past	per	round	since	through	to
toward	towards	under	underneath	until	up	upon
via	with	within	without			



## GRAMMAR STUDY: AT, IN, ON

### AT

<i>fixed watch time</i> .....	at 5 o'clock, at 2 pm, at 6:30
<i>specific time</i> .....	at mealtimes, at lunch time, at tiffin time
<i>parts of the day</i> .....	at night, at midnight, at noon
<i>expressions with 'end'</i> .....	at the weekend, at the end of this month
<i>festivals and celebrations</i> .....	at Dashain, at ID, at Chhat, at Tihar
<i>with the expressions of place</i> .....	at the end, at the entrance, at the top, at the bottom
<i>specific location</i> .....	at the airport, at the table, at the park, at the bus stop
<i>an activity</i> .....	at work, at school, at play
<i>superlatives</i> .....	at least, at the worst, at its best
<i>order</i> .....	at first, at last, at the first attempt, at the second attempt
<i>towards</i> .....	Look at me. She waved at them.
<i>certain age/speed/temperature</i> .....	He died at ninety. Water boils at 100° Celsius.
<i>rate/price</i> .....	She bought some oranges at Rs. 50 a kilo.

### IN

<i>months</i> .....	in May, in December, in Baishakh, in Ashwin
<i>years</i> .....	in 2005, in 1985, in 1920s
<i>seasons</i> .....	in spring, in winter, in summer, in autumn
<i>parts of the day</i> .....	in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening
<i>duration/within a certain time</i> .....	in a minute, in two weeks, in three years, in six months
<i>place thought of as an area</i> .....	in Nepal, in Asia, in Delhi, in Singapore, in Britain
<i>within a location</i> .....	in the room, in the building, in the office, in the kitchen
<i>wearing</i> .....	the boy in the blue shirt, the girl in the red sari
<i>condition</i> .....	in doubt, in a hurry, in love, in tears, in good health
<i>in a line/row/queue/street</i> .....	He is standing in a queue.
<i>colours and types</i> .....	He printed his name in red in capital letters.
<i>a member of</i> .....	He is in the army. Are you in the navy?
<i>small vehicles</i> .....	He will come here in his car.

### ON

<i>days of a week</i> .....	on Sunday, on Friday, on Wednesday
<i>dates</i> .....	on May 20 <sup>th</sup> , on 5 <sup>th</sup> December, on 22 <sup>nd</sup> June
<i>special days</i> .....	on my birthday, on New Year's day, on Children's Day
<i>touching the surface of</i> .....	on the table, on the wall, on the ceiling, on his shirt
<i>about</i> .....	a book on engineering, a poem on child rights
<i>a state or condition</i> .....	on strike, on fire, on holiday, on sale, on credit
<i>through the medium of</i> .....	on the radio, on television, on computer
<i>to talk about dependence or survival</i> .....	These insects live on potatoes. These machines run on diesel oil.
<i>as soon as something happens</i> .....	On reaching at the airport, I rang you up.
<i>to talk about films and plays</i> .....	On returning, he checked his bag. What's on TV tonight? What's on at the Kumari?
<i>large vehicles</i> .....	on a bus, on a train, on a ship
<i>rides</i> .....	on a bicycle, on a horse, on an elephant
<i>physical positions</i> .....	on the right, on the left



**Grammar Practice:** Fill in 'at', 'in' or 'on' in the blank spaces. (Time)

- |                     |                         |                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| ..... 3 o'clock     | ..... May               | ..... Sunday          |
| ..... the mornings  | ..... Saturday mornings | ..... May 10, 2004    |
| ..... bedtime       | ..... the weekend       | ..... the evening     |
| ..... the Ice Age   | ..... my birthday       | ..... the moment      |
| ..... sunset        | ..... the next century  | ..... Monday evening  |
| ..... the past      | ..... New Year's Eve    | ..... sunrise         |
| ..... Education Day | ..... Independence Day  | ..... night           |
| ..... 10:30 am      | ..... summer            | ..... Tuesdays        |
| ..... 1990          | ..... dinnertime        | ..... the future      |
| ..... lunchtime     | ..... the summer        | ..... June 15         |
| ..... the 1990s     | ..... the morning       | ..... Tuesday morning |



**Grammar Practice:** Fill in 'at', 'in' or 'on' in the blank spaces. (Place)

- |                           |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| ..... reception           | ..... the corner          | ..... the wall     |
| ..... the sky             | ..... the way             | ..... a building   |
| ..... school              | ..... a helicopter        | ..... a lift       |
| ..... the door            | ..... the hut             | ..... a row        |
| ..... a taxi              | ..... a train             | ..... the carpet   |
| ..... college             | ..... a plane             | ..... a bicycle    |
| ..... the top of the page | ..... the end of the road | ..... the entrance |
| ..... the cover           | ..... the bus stop        | ..... Kathmandu    |
| ..... a car               | ..... a bus               | ..... work         |
| ..... the crossroads      | ..... the front desk      | ..... a page       |
| ..... the radio           | ..... a box               | ..... the top      |
| ..... the newspaper       | ..... television          | ..... a horse      |
| ..... the left            | ..... my pocket           | ..... an elephant  |
| ..... university          | ..... a ship              | ..... a boat       |
| ..... the right           | ..... my wallet           | ..... the bottom   |
| ..... the door            | ..... Germany             | ..... a motorbike  |
| ..... the ceiling         | ..... the floor           | ..... home         |

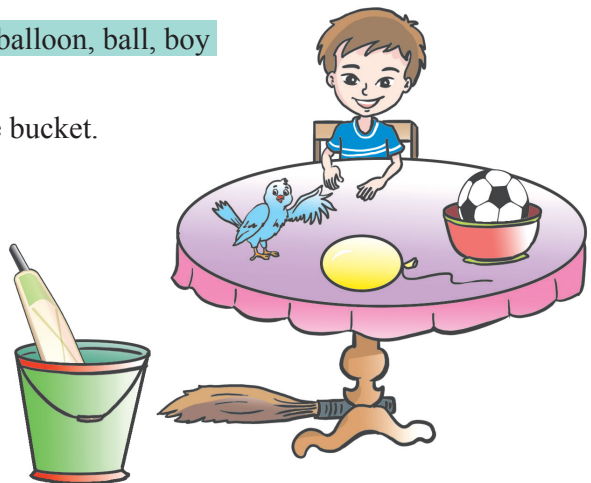


**Speaking Practice:** Look at the pictures and say where the following things are.

broom, basket, bat, bucket, bird, balloon, ball, boy

A: Where is the broom?

B: It is under the table. It is behind the bucket.





## GRAMMAR STUDY: OF, TO, WITH, BY, FOR, FROM

### OF

<i>possession or belonging</i> .....	a friend of mine, the people of this village, the water of this river, the colour of this wall, the car of my father
<i>something made from</i> .....	a shirt of cotton, a sari of silk, a house made of brick
<i>containing</i> .....	a bag of potatoes, a box of chocolates, a bundle of sticks
<i>quantity</i> .....	two kilos of rice, five litres of milk, four kilos of apples
<i>measurement of uncountable nouns</i> .....	a cup of tea, a log of wood, a blade of grass
<i>location</i> .....	east of here, the middle of the road
<i>part of a group</i> .....	one of us, a member of the team, a student of this school
<i>in the sense of 'by'</i> .....	I like to watch the recent films of David Dhawan.
<i>cause</i> .....	A lot of people per year die of this disease on average.

### TO

<i>destination</i> .....	I am going to Dharan. She has gone to Delhi.
<i>in the direction of</i> .....	Turn to the right. Turn to the left.
<i>until</i> .....	from Monday to Friday, five minutes to ten
<i>compared with</i> .....	They prefer tea to coffee.
<i>with indirect object</i> .....	Please give it to me. He sent a letter to them.
<i>as part of infinitive</i> .....	I like to play basketball. They wanted to meet me.
<i>in order to</i> .....	We went to the chemist to buy some aspirin.
<i>add</i> .....	Add ten to fifteen.
<i>purpose</i> .....	I invited all my friends to dinner.

### WITH

<i>accompanying</i> .....	He stayed with me. He came here with his aunt.
<i>having; containing</i> .....	Here is a book with a map of the island. Who is that boy with a black cat?
<i>by means of; using</i> .....	I repaired the shoes with glue. She cut it with a knife. He killed it with an arrow.
<i>manner</i> .....	He did it with pleasure/ease/ difficulty.
<i>because of</i> .....	We were paralyzed with fear.
<i>physical features and diseases</i> .....	The girl with brown hair is my friend. There is a man with a limp.
<i>the opposite of 'against'</i> .....	If he is with me, I can easily solve this problem. Are you with us or against us?
<i>giving assistance</i> .....	Can you help me with the washing up? She helped us with Science problems.
<i>doing things competitively</i> .....	They always argue with me. She is fighting with her elder brother.

### BY

<i>near</i> .....	There is a house by the river. He sat by his father.
<i>past</i> .....	He waved as he drove by the house.
<i>not later than</i> .....	Try to finish the work by next week. Can you finish this project work by tomorrow?
<i>to the extent of</i> .....	I beat Hemant by six marks.
<i>agent (passive)</i> .....	The house was decorated by my father.
<i>in units of</i> .....	cheaper by the dozen, sold by weight, by the tons
<i>means</i> .....	by cheque, by credit card, travel by plane, by bus
<i>divide /multiply</i> .....	Divide 50 by 10. Multiply 5 by 6.
<i>manner</i> .....	I caught the mouse by its tail.

## FOR

<i>duration of time</i> .....	We walked for two hours. She has been ill for two days.
<i>purpose</i> .....	These books are for blind people. What is this tool for? I bought this dress for my brother.
<i>in view of</i> .....	She is not fit for this post.
<i>distance</i> .....	I walked for five kilometres.
<i>in the direction of</i> .....	She left for Delhi last week. They will leave for America next week.
<i>in favour of</i> .....	I will vote for her. Are you for and against the motion?
<i>considering</i> .....	The boy is clever for his age.
<i>on behalf of</i> .....	We should fight for the poor.
<i>inappropriateness for something</i> .....	This is not good for you. It's bad for you.

## FROM

<i>place of origin</i> .....	They come from Nepal. She comes from Germany.
<i>start of a range</i> .....	From 10 to 15 protestors were arrested. .
<i>source</i> .....	This saying is from Austen's novel. I knew it from her.
<i>cause</i> .....	He suffers from nervousness. Did he suffer from heart disease?
<i>getting safety</i> .....	He had to take shelter from the rain. The hunter saved the girl from the tiger.
<i>being unlike</i> .....	Her behaviour is different from her sister.
<i>after or onwards</i> .....	The park will be open from Monday.
<i>start of a period of time</i> .....	She was with me from yesterday until today.
<i>distance</i> .....	The bus park is very far away from here. It's a few minutes' walk from here.



### Grammar Practice: Fill in 'to,'with,'by','for','from' or 'of' in the blank spaces.

- Riya arrived at the party.....her brother.
- I gave that packet.....my mother.
- The people.....this village are very honest.
- He caught the thief.....the hand.
- I was invited.....dinner.....Anita.
- Leave your dog.....me; I'll look after it.
- Have you ever been.....Lumbini?
- She bought a litre.....milk.
- I saw a girl.....a red umbrella.
- Have you come here.....your father?
- Where are you coming.....?
- I told him to divide 65.....5 but he couldn't.
- The plays.....Shakespeare are immortal.
- These two boys were fighting.....each other.
- The novel was written.....Austen.
- The lady was carrying a basket.....flowers.
- They went.....the temple.....meet the priest.
- Did he leave.....Pokhara last week?
- Are you going.....Pokhara.....plane or.....bus?
- They have promised.....finish the work.....next week.
- Can you complete the work.....next Monday?
- Will you pay.....cheque or.....credit card?



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Some More Prepositions

about	<i>on the subject of</i> : This poem is about tigers in the zoo. Is it about poverty? <i>approximately</i> : There are about ten students in the hall. He is about 60.
above	<i>higher than</i> : The clock hangs above my bed. The plane flew above the clouds. <i>earlier on a page</i> : There is a heading above each diagram.
below	<i>lower than</i> : This lake is 50 metres below sea level. <i>later on a page</i> : Footnotes are provided below the text.
over	<i>above; higher than</i> : There is a bulb over that table. <i>covering</i> : We spread an extra blanket over the bed. <i>more than</i> : It costs over five thousand rupees.
under	<i>beneath</i> : There is a ball under the table. Who is that girl under the tree? <i>less than</i> : Under 15 students failed the final exam.
across	<i>from one side to the other side</i> : We walked across the road. <i>on the other side of</i> : There is a health post across the street.
along	<i>in a line; from one point to another</i> : They're walking along the road.
after	<i>one follows the other</i> : The cat ran after the dog. Is she always after you? <i>later in time</i> : Did he come after lunch? They met me after 10. <i>later in a series</i> : D comes after C in the alphabet. <i>in pursuit of</i> : He always runs after money. Several people are after this job.
before	<i>earlier in time</i> : He came here before lunch. Do you come here before 4 pm? <i>earlier in a series</i> : D comes before E in the alphabet.
between	<i>within a group of two</i> : The books were divided between the two students. <i>in-between location</i> : Our school is between the hospital and the park. <i>in-between time</i> : He came here between June and September. <i>in-between in a series</i> : M comes between L and N in the alphabet.
among	<i>in a group</i> : The money was shared among five people.
behind	<i>at the back of</i> : Our school is behind the hospital. Is a dog behind the gate?
in front of	<i>ahead of</i> : He stood in front of the class. There is a dog in front of the gate.
around	<i>in a circular way</i> : They were sitting around the campfire. <i>surrounding</i> : There is a wire fence around the park. <i>in different parts of</i> : I looked around the room for the letters. <i>in the other direction</i> : We turned around and went back home. <i>approximately</i> : He is around six feet tall.
beside	<i>next to</i> : Our house is beside the supermarket.
against	<i>touching; supported by</i> : He leaned the ladder against the wall. <i>in opposition to</i> : Dowry is against the law.
outside	<i>opposite of inside</i> : Can you wait outside?
inside	<i>opposite of outside</i> : You shouldn't stay inside the castle.
close to	<i>near</i> : Our house is close to the supermarket.
near	<i>close to</i> : Our house is near the supermarket.
next to	<i>beside</i> : Our house is next to the supermarket.
off	<i>away from something</i> : The cat jumped off the roof.
onto	<i>moving to a place</i> : The cat jumped onto the roof.
into	<i>entering something</i> : You shouldn't go into the castle.
opposite	<i>on the other side</i> : Our house is opposite the supermarket.

out of	<i>leaving something:</i> The cat jumped out of the window. <i>to the outside of:</i> She went out of the room. <i>from among:</i> We won two games out of three. <i>material:</i> The bridge is made out of steel. <i>beyond:</i> The child is not out of danger.
past	<i>up to and beyond:</i> I walked past the post office. <i>after (in time):</i> It was half past three when I reached there.
round	<i>in a circle:</i> We're sitting round the campfire.
through	<i>going from one point to the other point:</i> You shouldn't walk through the forest. <i>for the whole of a period:</i> We slept through the night. <i>by means of:</i> Skill improves through practice.
towards	<i>in the direction of:</i> We ran towards the hut.
up	<i>from low to high:</i> He went up the hill.
down	<i>from high to low:</i> He came down the hill. The ball rolled down the stairs.
beyond	<i>further than; exceeding:</i> That was beyond my expectations.
during	<i>throughout a period:</i> She works during the night.
except	<i>not including:</i> I invited all except Jenny.
per	<i>for each:</i> He drove around 60 kilometres per hour.
since	<i>from a specific time in the past:</i> I had been waiting since two o'clock. <i>from a past time until now:</i> I have been waiting here since noon.
throughout	<i>in every part of:</i> This custom is found throughout the world. <i>for the whole of a period:</i> I faced that problem throughout the winter.
till/until	<i>up to a certain time:</i> They will stay here until Friday.
up to	<i>as far as:</i> I have read up to page 100. <i>depending on:</i> The decision is up to you.
within	<i>inside of:</i> I will be there within ten minutes. Mark within the circle.
without	<i>not having:</i> Do not leave without eating breakfast. He came here without his camera.



**Grammar Practice:** Work in pairs and discuss.

Diagram illustrating prepositions using cubes and circles:

- on:** A cube with 'A' on top. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- between:** Two cubes with 'A' between them. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- in front of:** One cube with 'A' in front of it. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- behind:** One cube with 'A' behind it. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- among:** Three cubes with 'A' among them. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- around:** Three curved arrows with 'A' in the center. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- inside:** A circle with 'A' inside. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.
- outside:** A circle with 'A' outside. Below it is a dotted line for a sentence.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Prepositions Used in Idioms and Phrases

### At

not at all: *not in any way*  
at any rate: *whatever happens*  
at a distance: *not near*  
at first: *at the beginning*  
at hand: *near; readily available*  
at a loss: *uncertain what to do or say*  
at the moment: *now*  
at present: *now*  
at risk: *threatened by danger or loss*

at all times: *always*  
at close quarters: *very near*  
at fault: *causing something wrong*  
see at a glance: *see immediately*  
at last: *finally, after some delay*  
at the mercy of: *without defense against*  
at once: *immediately*  
at rest: *not moving*  
at this point: *at this place; at this moment*

### In

in addition to: *as well as*  
be in agreement with: *have the same opinion as*  
in brief: *in a few words*  
be in charge of: *have responsibility for*  
in common: *shared by all members of a group*  
in control: *having the power to direct something*  
in danger: *likely to be harmed*  
in demand: *desired by many people*  
in detail: *(explain something) thoroughly*  
in earnest: *seriously; in a determined way*  
in fact: *in reality; really*  
in favour of: *supporting (an idea)*  
in a flash: *very quickly; suddenly*  
in general: *usually; as a whole*  
in a hurry: *trying to accomplish something quickly*  
in kind: *(payment) in goods rather than in money*  
in the long term: *looking ahead to the distant future*  
in a moment: *soon; quickly*  
in order to: *for the purpose of*  
in power: *(of a political party) holding office*  
in public: *openly; not in private*  
in a second: *soon; quickly*  
in stock: *(of goods at a store) present and available*  
be in time: *not be late*

in advance: *before*  
in any case: *whatever happens*  
in bulk: *in large amounts*  
once in a while: *occasionally*  
in vain: *without success*  
in the course of: *during*  
in debt: *owing money*  
in depth: *(investigate something) thoroughly*  
in doubt: *uncertain*  
in effect: *(of rules) operating*  
in fashion: *fashionable*  
in flames: *burning, with visible flames*  
in full: *without omitting anything*  
hand in hand: *occurring together*  
in a minute: *soon*  
in no time: *very soon; very quickly*  
in the long run: *in the end; eventually*  
in order of: *arranged according to*  
in particular: *especially*  
in private: *not in front of other people*  
in reality: *really*  
in sight: *able to be seen*  
in that case: *if that is true*  
in tune: *at the correct pitch*

### On

on account of: *because of*  
on behalf of: *for; in the interests of*  
on business: *as part of one's work*  
on demand: *when asked for*  
on duty: *engaged in one's regular work*  
to go on foot: *to walk*  
on no account: *absolutely not*  
on the other hand: *in contrast*  
on sale: *being sold at a lower price than usual*  
on the whole: *taking everything into consideration*

on the average: *usually; normally*  
on board: *on a ship or airplane*  
on condition that: *only if; provided that*  
on display: *being exhibited*  
on fire: *burning*  
get on one's nerves: *annoy; irritate*  
on order: *requested but not yet delivered*  
on purpose: *deliberately*  
on time: *at the correct time*  
on the verge of: *very close to; about to*

### By

by accident: *not deliberately*  
bit by bit: *gradually*  
by courtesy of: *with the help or permission of*  
by hand: *without the use of machinery*  
little by little: *gradually*  
by mistake: *accidentally*  
one by one: *one at a time*  
side by side: *beside one another*

by all means: *by any possible method*  
by chance: *by accident; without planning*  
by degrees: *gradually*  
by heart: *from memory*  
by means of: *by using*  
by no means: *not at all*  
by oneself: *alone*  
by the way: *incidentally*

by hand: *without the use of machinery*  
little by little: *gradually*  
by mistake: *accidentally*  
one by one: *one at a time*  
side by side: *beside one another*

by heart: *from memory*  
by means of: *by using*  
by no means: *not at all*  
by oneself: *alone*  
by the way: *incidentally*

### For

for certain: *definitely; without doubt*  
for fun: *for the sake of enjoyment*  
for instance: *for example; as an illustration*  
for a living: *as a profession*  
for the sake of: *for the benefit of*  
for a while: *for a period of time*  
for sure: *definitely*

for example: *as an illustration*  
for good: *permanently*  
for keeps: *(colloquial) permanently*  
for now: *temporarily*  
for sale: *intended to be sold*  
word for word: *exactly as said or written*  
for the time being: *until some other arrangement is made*

### Out of

out of the blue: *unexpectedly*  
out of character: *unlike a person's known character*  
out of control: *not able to be regulated or guided*  
out of fashion: *not presently in common use*  
out of order: *not functioning properly*

out of breath: *puffing and panting after running*  
out of danger: *safe*  
out of date: *old-fashioned*  
out of hand: *not under control*  
out of sight: *hidden, not able to be seen*  
out of style: *not fashionable*  
out of trouble: *not in trouble*

out of town: *having temporarily left town*  
out of work: *no longer having employment*

### Some other prepositions:

to a certain extent: *partly*  
up to date: *current; modern*  
to the point: *relevant*  
under control: *able to be regulated or guided*  
be under oath: *have sworn to tell the truth*  
with regard to: *concerning; about*  
from all sides: *from all directions*  
from time to time: *occasionally*  
within limits: *to a certain extent; not too much*  
of course: *certainly*  
one's point of view: *one's opinion about something*  
off one's hands: *no longer one's responsibility*  
off the track: *following a wrong line of thought or action*

to date: *so far; until now*  
see eye to eye with: *agree entirely with*  
under consideration: *being thought about*  
be under the influence of: *be affected by*  
under observation: *being watched carefully*  
with respect to: *concerning; about*  
from head to foot: *completely; all over*  
inside out: *with the inner side out; thoroughly*  
go without saying: *be obvious*  
hard of hearing: *somewhat deaf*  
off duty: *not engaged in one's regular work*  
off and on: *from time to time*

## Nouns followed by prepositions

### For

have affection for	make allowances for	have compassion for
an excuse for	a reason for	have a reputation for
have respect for	have sympathy for	pave the way for (prepare for)

### In

have confidence in	have faith in	have an interest in
take part in	make progress in	

### Of

take advantage of	take care of	take command of	evidence of	
an example of	make a fool of	make fun of	a lack of	a number of
a pair of	be part of	a possibility of	a proof of	a quantity of
recognition of	a recollection of	a result of	a sign of	a survey of
a symbol of	a symptom of	a token of	make use of	a way of

### On

an attack on	dependence on	make an impression on
play a joke on	have pity on	

**To**  
 have access to                    pay attention to                    an objection to                    a reply to                    a response to

**With**  
 have a connection with                    fall in love with                    change places with

**From**  
 absence from

## Adjectives and verbs in the passive voice followed by prepositions

**To**  
 acceptable to                    accessible to                    accustomed to                    adapted to                    addicted to  
 adjacent to                    attached to                    attributable to                    close to                    committed to  
 comparable to                    dedicated to                    detrimental to                    devoted to                    due to  
 equal to                    equivalent to                    essential to                    exposed to                    faithful to  
 favourable to                    foreign to                    indifferent to                    inferior to                    kind to  
 loyal to                    next to                    obedient to                    obliged to                    oblivious to  
 opposed to                    parallel to                    partial to                    peculiar to                    preferable to  
 prior to                    proportional to                    reconciled to                    reduced to                    related to  
 relative to                    relevant to                    resigned to                    resistant to                    restricted to  
 senior to                    sensitive to                    similar to                    superior to                    tied to

**With**  
 acquainted with                    affiliated with                    associated with                    besieged with                    compared with  
 compatible with                    confronted with                    consistent with                    covered with                    cursed with  
 exasperated with                    familiar with                    finished with                    identified with                    infatuated with  
 patient with                    pleased with                    satisfied with                    synonymous with                    threatened with

**About**  
 anxious about                    concerned about                    curious about                    depressed about                    doubtful about  
 enthusiastic about                    excited about                    happy about                    pleased about                    wrong about  
 worried about

**For**  
 blamed for                    eligible for                    famous for                    fit for                    known for  
 late for                    noted for                    praised for                    punished for                    qualified for  
 ready for                    responsible for                    ripe for                    sorry for                    suitable for

**From**  
 absent from                    apart from                    derived from                    descended from                    detached from  
 different from                    distinct from                    exempt from                    far from                    isolated from  
 omitted from                    protected from                    removed from                    safe from                    separated from

**Of**  
 accused of                    afraid of                    ashamed of                    aware of                    capable of  
 certain of                    composed of                    conscious of                    convinced of                    deprived of  
 devoid of                    fond of                    ignorant of                    independent of                    jealous of  
 proud of                    regardless of                    reminded of                    sure of                    suspicious of  
 suspected of                    terrified of                    tired of                    worthy of

**At**  
 dept at                    alarmed at                    amazed at  
 overjoyed at                    shocked at                    surprised at

**By**  
 accompanied by                    caused by                    manufactured by                    written by

**In**  
 absorbed in                    disappointed in                    engaged in  
 immersed in                    interested in                    involved in

**On**  
 based on                    dependent on                    intent on

## Verbs followed by prepositions

### On

blame on  
impose on  
reflect on  
subsist on

concentrate on  
insist on  
rely on  
thrive on

depend on  
intrude on  
report on

impinge on  
pounce on  
spy on

### To

adapt to  
belong to  
listen to  
refer to  
revert to  
surrender to

adhere to  
conform to  
object to  
relate to  
submit to  
yield to

adjust to  
contribute to  
pertain to  
respond to  
subscribe to

amount to  
correspond to  
prefer to  
resort to  
succumb to

### With

agree with  
communicate with  
contend with  
flirt with

associate with  
comply with  
cooperate with  
mingle with

collaborate with  
concur with  
cope with  
share with

combine with  
consort with  
correspond with  
sympathize with

### At

aim at  
gaze at  
look at  
snap at

bark at  
glare at  
point at  
stare at

connive at  
growl at  
shoot at  
wave at

frown at  
hint at  
smile at  
wink at

### For

apply for  
budget for  
mourn for  
prepare for  
shop for

apologize for  
hope for  
pay for  
press for  
substitute for

beg for  
long for  
plead for  
register for  
wait for

blame for  
look for  
pray for  
search for  
wish for

### From

abstain from  
desist from  
differ from  
flee from  
quote from  
refrain from

benefit from  
deter from  
divert from  
infer from  
radiate from  
shrink from

deduct from  
detract from  
escape from  
profit from  
recoil from  
stem from

derive from  
deviate from  
extricate from  
protect from  
recover from  
suffer from

### About

care about  
talk about

complain about  
think about

forget about  
wonder about

lie about (tell a lie)  
worry about

### Against

discriminate against

protest against

rebel against

turn against

### In

believe in  
invest in

engage in  
participate in

indulge in  
persist in

intervene in  
succeed in

### Into

change into  
develop into  
plunge into

convert into  
divide into  
pry into

delve into  
fall into  
sink into

dip into  
merge into  
transform into

### Of

approve of  
deprive of

beware of  
die of

conceive of  
disapprove of

consist of  
smell of

### Over

preside over

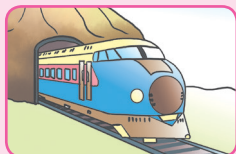
trip over



**Grammar Practice:** Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks with correct prepositions.



He carried the rubbish.....the bin.



The train came.....the tunnel.



He swam.....the channel.



He walked.....the road.



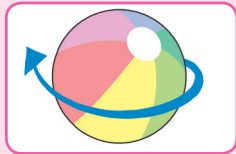
He skied.....the mountain.



They walked.....the bridge.



The man ran.....the cliff.



The arrow is moving.....the ball.



The man poured the sand.....the timer.

up

off

through

to

across

around

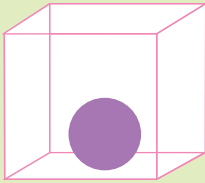
into

over

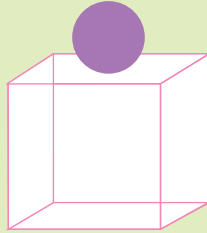
down



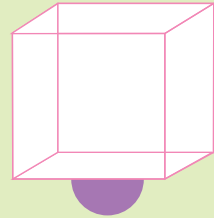
**Grammar Practice:** Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks with correct prepositions.



The ball is.....the box.



The ball is.....the box.



The ball is.....the box.

Anu



Anu's house is.....  
Kabir's house.

Kabir



Kabir's house is.....  
Ali's and Anu's houses.

Ali



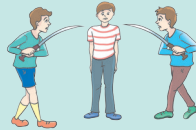
on the left of  
on the right of  
in the middle of

Ali's house is.....  
Kabir's.

between, opposite, behind, beside, over, on



The climbers stood.....the mountain.



The man stood.....the two enemies.



The enemies stood.....each other.



The gardeners stood.....the pumpkins.



The man stood.....the gopher and held the umbrella.....it.

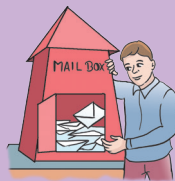
in, on, through, at



The man looked.....the telescope in his hands.



The man wrote the address.....the package.



The man looked.....the mail.....the post box.



The man looked.....the clock.....the wall.



The manager sat.....his desk.....his chair.



## Test Yourself



### Fill in the blanks with correct prepositions:

1. 'Twilight' was awarded as the best movie.....2009.
2. Julie became out.....the first round of the competition.
3. Will you be able to return here.....May 20?
4. His father worked.....this factory.....July till September.
5. Nobody spoke.....that road accident.
6. We are leaving for Pokhara.....three days.
7. The exam is.....the tenth of December.
8. I couldn't find the solution.....that problem.
9. Barsha wrote her name.....capital letters.
10. We made lots of friends when we were.....Kathmandu.
11. The restaurant opens.....the evening only.
12. Congratulations.....your success!
13. The presentation finished.....thirty minutes.
14. The trouble.....him is that he never speaks clearly.
15. His grandfather died.....the age of 99.
16. We must finish the work.....Sunday.
17. Pratistha is sitting.....her desk.
18. This gate opens.....noon and closes at midnight.
19. The health post is just.....the corner.
20. Put a stamp.....the envelope.
21. Do you get up early.....the morning?
22. It's always colder.....November than September.
23. People invite their friends and relatives.....Dashain.
24. Have you spoken.....him yet?
25. They eat too much.....Christmas Day.



## Test Yourself



### Fill in the blanks with correct prepositions:

1. What's the matter.....her?
2. Her father suffers.....a heart disease.
3. She'll be away.....next week.
4. They'll finish this work.....two weeks.
5. I like to go to a party.....New Year's Eve.
6. Their first child was born.....the spring.
7. I'll see you.....ten o'clock tomorrow.
8. That corner shop closes.....midnight.
9. I've known him.....a long time.
10. At this place, snow generally falls.....February.
11. We have computer classes.....Thursday and Friday.
12. His uncle was off work.....a fortnight.
13. The bus usually arrives here.....time.
14. Pemba is having a party.....her birthday.
15. Her mother is working.....the kitchen table.
16. Anjali has a drawing book open.....the table.
17. What time do we have to be.....the airport?
18. The injured person sat.....the floor until help came.

19. Klitzing won the Nobel Prize.....Physics.....1985.
20. The treaty was signed on 15 April.....2001.
21. Is Mary.....home?
22. Anila was embarrassed because everybody was laughing.....her.
23. Riya goes.....the office.....eight.
24. There is no one.....the world who can help me now.
25. Bhola had an ink stain.....his shirt.



### Fill in the blanks choosing correct prepositions from the brackets:

1. The design of most computers is based.....binary arithmetic. (for, on, at)
2. S comes.....T in the alphabet. (before, behind, between)
3. A knowledge of mathematics is essential.....an engineer. (to, with, of)
4. The treasure was hidden.....the earth. (under, up to, below)
5. We are satisfied.....the arrangement. (for, with, at)
6. We played a joke.....him. (of, on, from)
7. We soon took command.....the situation. (of, with, in)
8. I looked.....the book but didn't find anything about him. (by, on, through)
9. I'm looking.....to your letter. (forward, up, ahead)
10. John will be able to do it.....three weeks. (for, since, in)
11. Leaves change colour.....autumn. (in, on, at)
12. Mr. Yadav has been away from home.....May 15. (since, for, in)
13. Nocturnal animals usually sleep.....the day. (during, underneath)
14. Pay close attention.....the traffic signals. (for, to, at)
15. We walked.....the restaurant. (despite, past, before)
16. The children were curious.....what we were doing. (about, for, at)
17. We will be gone.....two days. (for, since, in)
18. His poems were translated.....many languages. (by, for, into)
19. I brought the wrong book.....mistake.(at, in, by)
20. I finished studying my lesson.....one hour. (for, since, in)
21. When water is heated, it changes.....steam. (in, into, for)
22. The Principal made a speech.....the future of the school. (about, around, with)
23. When the girl saw the tiger, she cried.....for help. (out, in, for)
24. He possesses an enormous capacity.....hard work. (with, for, on)
25. You need to concentrate.....what you are doing. (into, on, for)
26. They objected.....his plan at first, but accepted it later. (against, about, to)
27. Young children are often suspicious.....strangers. (of, to, for)
28. Her parents didn't approve.....her marriage to that man. (of, on, in)
29. The store is open daily.....Monday to Friday. (for, from, at)
30. A balanced meal consists.....vitamins, minerals, proteins and carbohydrates. (of, with, on)

**Fill in the blanks choosing correct prepositions from the brackets:**

1. A plane flew .....our house at noon. (under, over, on)
2. Anita threw her books carelessly .....the bed. (into, onto, in)
3. Anu is sitting .....Jenny and Anita. (between, among, in)
4. Anu said some very hard things .....Kunal. (to, with, at)
5. At three o'clock we reached the top .....the hill. (of, off, at)
6. Atul answered this question .....thinking. (without, for, on)
7. They objected .....his plan at first, but accepted it later. (against, about, to)
8. They walked .....the building twice looking for the entrance. (along, around, at)
9. They were gossiping about him .....his back. (after, behind, under)
10. Time is running ....., we need to make a decision quickly. (off, on, out)
11. We can reach there on foot because it is .....easy walking distance. (within, out, in)
12. We stood .....the tree waiting for the rain to stop. (under, over, in)
13. When the girl saw the tiger, she cried .....for help. (out, in, for)
14. You have delivered all of the papers .....this one. (between, but, except)
15. Columbus crossed the Atlantic .....1492. (at, in, on)
16. D comes .....C and E in the alphabet. (between, beyond, after)
17. He solved this question .....my help. (without, for, on)
18. He applied .....the position of a Science teacher. (to, for, at)
19. He wrote this letter .....a pencil. (by, with, in)
20. He is too young. He is .....age for admission to that nightclub. (under, over, on)
21. He possesses an enormous capacity .....hard work. (with, for, on)
22. He talked to her .....his cell phone. (for, on, at)
23. The weather didn't improve. It went .....bad to worse. (until, from, to)
24. There is a lack .....information on this subject. (for, of, with)
25. Heat and light radiate .....the sun. (from, of, at)
26. Her parents didn't approve .....her marriage to that man. (of, on, in)
27. The tea that she served smelled .....mint. (with, about, of)
28. Her sister put .....ten kilograms during the winter and has to go on a diet. (back, in, on)
29. His poems were translated .....many languages. (by, for, into)
30. His sister stays at home .....ten; then she goes to the supermarket. (at, until, after)
31. I don't think that he will be able to carry .....his plan. (away, out, over)
32. I finished studying my lesson .....one hour. (for, since, in)
33. The police warned them not to sell goods that are .....standard. (above, below, for )
34. I have taught here .....September. (for, since, in)
35. The criminals broke .....at night, killed the guard and robbed the store. (in, down, up)
36. I looked .....the book but didn't find anything about him. (by, on, through)
37. I was very early. I arrived an hour .....time. (before, after, by)
38. I watched the plane take .....and disappear into the clouds. (off, out, up)
39. I went to work .....my umbrella. (out of, without)
40. I will arrive sometime .....three and four in the afternoon. (from, among, between)

# Reported Speech

## Read the sentences.

*I'm in the middle of a meeting now.  
I'll call you back this afternoon.  
You can meet my secretary if something urgent has come up.  
I'll certainly give your message to my secretary.  
Will you meet me tomorrow?*



## What did the manager tell you?

He said that he was in the middle of a meeting then.

He said that he would call me back that afternoon.

He said that I could meet his secretary if something urgent had come up.

He said that he would certainly give my message to his secretary.

He asked me if I would meet him the next day.

## The words of a speaker can be reported in one of two ways:

➤ We can quote the actual words of the speaker. This is called **Direct Speech**. We can use inverted commas with suitable reporting verbs (say, tell, ask, report, order, advise, etc.) to quote the actual words spoken by the speaker.

He said, "I'm in the middle of a meeting now."  
"I'll call you back this afternoon."  
"You can meet my secretary if something urgent has come up."  
"I'll certainly give your message to my secretary."  
"Will you meet me tomorrow?"

➤ We often report what somebody said without giving their exact words. This is called **Indirect Speech**. We do not use quotation marks to enclose what the person said and it doesn't have to be the actual words of the speaker.

He said that he was in the middle of a meeting then.

He said that he would call me back that afternoon.

He said that I could meet his secretary if something urgent had come up.

He said that he would certainly give my message to his secretary.

He asked if I would meet him the next day.



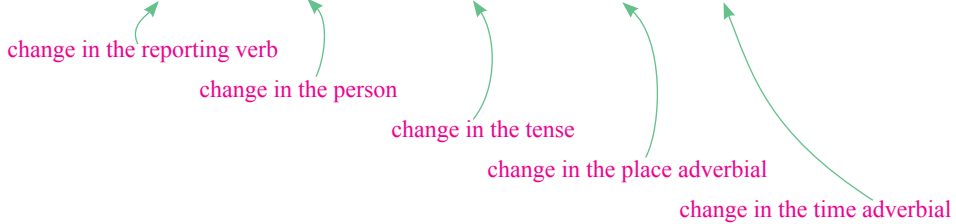
**Listening Practice:** Repeat these sentences after your teacher.

- Direct* : Rahim said to Sabnam, "I'm unwell today."
- Indirect* : Rahim told Sabnam that he was unwell that day.
- Direct* : Pukar said to Rahul, "I'm doing my lessons now."
- Indirect* : Pukar told Rahul that he was doing his lessons then.
- Direct* : Anita said, "I may go away tomorrow."
- Indirect* : Anita said that she might go away the next day.
- Direct* : Tina said to Remo, "Where are you going?"
- Indirect* : Tina asked Remo where he was going.
- Direct* : He said to me, "Will you give me your pen?"
- Indirect* : He asked me if I would give him my pen.
- Direct* : Tina said to him, "Show me your album."
- Indirect* : Tina told him to show her his album.
- Direct* : She said, "What a beautiful doll it is!"
- Indirect* : She exclaimed with surprise that it was a beautiful doll.



**Grammar Practice:** Underline the changes in the following sentences.

- Direct* : He said to me, "My brother will come here tomorrow."
- Indirect* : He told me that his brother would come there the next day.



- Direct* : He said, "I'm in the middle of a meeting now."
- Indirect* : He said that he was in the middle of a meeting then.
- Direct* : He said, "I'll call you back this afternoon."
- Indirect* : He said that he would call me back that afternoon.
- Direct* : He said, "You can meet my secretary if something urgent has come up."
- Indirect* : He said that I could meet his secretary if something urgent had come up.
- Direct* : He said to me, "I'll certainly give your message to my secretary."
- Indirect* : He told me that he would certainly give my message to his secretary.
- Direct* : He said, "Will you meet me tomorrow?"
- Indirect* : He asked me if I would meet him the next day.
- Direct* : Riya said to Suman, "Please give me your notebook."
- Indirect* : Riya requested Suman to give her his notebook.
- Direct* : The doctor said to me, "Take a complete rest from football."
- Indirect* : The doctor advised me to take a complete rest from football.
- Direct* : The hijackers said, "We'll kill one passenger every hour if our demands are not met."
- Indirect* : The hijackers threatened that they would kill one passenger every hour if their demands were not met.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Punctuation and Word Order

- ⇒ We can use single inverted commas ( ‘ ’ ) or double inverted commas ( “ ” ) with suitable saying verbs (reporting) to quote the actual words spoken by the speaker. The first letter of the reported sentence is always capital.

She said, ‘I’m looking for my diary.’  
single inverted commas

She said, “I’m looking for my diary.”  
double inverted commas

- ⇒ If the ‘speaker + reporting verb’ come before the reported sentence, we generally put a comma ( , ) before inverted commas.

He said, “Can I use your camera?”  
comma to separate the speaker and the reported sentence

- ⇒ The speaker can come before and after the reported sentence (speech) or quoted speech.

Habiba said, “During Eid we give a donation to the poor.”  
comma inverted comma full stop inverted comma

“During Eid we give a donation to the poor,” Habiba said.  
inverted comma comma inverted comma full stop

Dad asked, “Where’s my notebook?”  
comma inverted comma question mark inverted comma

“Where’s my notebook?” asked Dad.  
inverted comma question mark inverted comma full stop

“What a nice dress!” said Mina.  
inverted comma exclamation inverted comma full stop

- ⇒ The speaker can come before and after the reporting verb if it is a noun. But, if the speaker is a pronoun, it normally comes before the reporting verb.

“It’s five o’clock already,” said Atul.  
reporting verb + noun

“It’s five o’clock already,” Atul said.  
noun + reporting verb

“What’s your name?” he asked.  
pronoun + reporting verb

- ⇒ If the speaker interrupts the reported sentence, the punctuation system is as follows:

“Of course,” said Tina, “we’ll attend the meeting.”  
inverted comma comma inverted comma comma inverted comma full stop inverted comma

“Why,” asked Mona angrily, “are you always late?”  
inverted comma comma inverted comma comma inverted comma question mark inverted comma



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Changes in Tenses

→ If the reporting verb is in the past tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech must be changed to one of the four forms of the past tense (simple, continuous, perfect, perfect continuous).

She said, "I'm a teacher."

*She said that she was a teacher.*

She said, "She likes teaching."

*She said that she liked teaching.*

She said, "I'm teaching English."

*She said she was teaching English.*

She said, "I've been teaching since 2001."

*She said she had been teaching since 2001.*

She said, "I taught voice yesterday."

*She said she had taught voice the previous day.*

She said, "I was teaching earlier."

*She said she had been teaching earlier.*

She said, "I'd already been teaching for ten minutes."

*She said she'd already been teaching for ten minutes.*

v <sup>1</sup> /v <sup>5</sup>	- v <sup>2</sup>
v <sup>2</sup>	- had + v <sup>3</sup>
has/have + v <sup>3</sup>	- had + v <sup>3</sup>
is/am/are	- was/were
has been/have been	- had been
was/were + v <sup>4</sup>	- had been + v <sup>4</sup>
was/were + NP	- had been + NP
shall/will + v <sup>1</sup>	- should/would + v <sup>1</sup>
may/can + v <sup>1</sup>	- might/could + v <sup>1</sup>
has to /have to + v <sup>1</sup>	- had to + v <sup>1</sup>
had to + v <sup>1</sup>	- had had to + v <sup>1</sup>
shall have	- should have
will have	- would have
don't /doesn't + v <sup>1</sup>	- didn't + v <sup>1</sup>
didn't + v <sup>1</sup>	- hadn't + v <sup>3</sup>
do/does (without 'not')	- v <sup>1</sup> to v <sup>2</sup>
did (without 'not')	- had + v <sup>3</sup>

→ In some cases, the simple past tense remains unchanged.

She said, "I had already started the lesson when he arrived."

*She said she had already started the lesson when he arrived.*

He said, "Columbus discovered America in 1492."

*He said that Columbus discovered America in 1492.*

He said, "I was watching TV when the telephone rang."

*He said that he had been watching TV when the telephone rang.*

→ The following changes need to be made to the modal auxiliary verbs:

shall/will + v<sup>1</sup> - should/would + v<sup>1</sup>

will have - would have

would/could/ might/ought + v<sup>1</sup> -(no change)

may/can + v<sup>1</sup> - might/could + v<sup>1</sup>

must (necessity) - had to

shall have -should have

must (duty/law/truth) - no change

She said, "I can teach English well."

*She said she could teach English well.*

She said, "What shall we learn today?"

*She asked what we should learn that day.*

She said, "May I sit here?"

*She asked if she might sit there.*

She said, "I must type the letter."

*She said she had to type the letter.*

"I would like to help," said Anu.

*Anu said that she would like to help.*

→ If the reporting verb is in a present or future tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech is not changed.

She says, "It's a sunny day today."

*She says that it's a sunny day today.*

She says, "I was working late last night."

*She says that she was working late last night.*

She has said, "She will take a short test next week."

*She has said that she will take a short test next week.*

She will say, "I'll teach reported speech tomorrow."

*She will say that she will teach reported speech tomorrow.*

Time adverbials also do not change when the reporting verb is in a present or future tense.

→ If the reported statement expresses habits, truths and scientific facts, the tense of the verb in the reported speech is not changed.

She said, "The earth revolves around the sun."

*She said that the earth revolves around the sun.*

She said, "Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius."

*She said that water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.*



### Grammar Practice: Fill in the blanks with the correct tense forms of the verbs.

He says, "I want to go there with you."

He said, "I want to go there with you."

He says, "I haven't met her."

He said, "I haven't met her."

He asks, "Does she live in this house?"

He asked, "Does she live in this house?"

He asks, "When will she come back?"

He asked, "When will she come back?"

She will say, "I know this man."

She said, "I know this man."

He says to me, "I can play the flute."

He said to me, "I can play the flute."

He said, "I'm having lunch with my parents."

He said, "I've been to Pokhara three times."

He said, "I've been working very hard."

He said, "I bought a new dress."

He said, "It was raining earlier."

He said, "The train had gone when I arrived."

He said, "I went to the theatre last night."

He said, "I'm having a party next weekend."

He said, "I'm staying here until next week."

He said, "I came from Jhapa two years ago."

He says that he.....to go there with us.

He said that he.....to go there with us.

He says that he.....her.

He says that he.....her.

He asks if she.....in this house.

He asked if she.....in that house.

He asks when she.....back.

He asked when she.....back.

She will say that she.....this man.

She said that she.....that man.

He tells me that he.....the flute.

He told me that he.....the flute.

He said he.....lunch with his parents.

He said he.....to Pokhara three times.

He said he.....very hard.

He said he.....a new dress.

He said it.....earlier.

He said that the train.....when he.....

He said he.....to the theatre the night before.

He said he.....a party the following weekend.

He said he.....there until the following week.

He said he.....from Jhapa two years before.



### GRAMMAR STUDY: Changes in Persons

We have to change the persons in reported speech to show who was being reported.

Generally personal pronouns are changed as follows:

→ First persons are changed according to the subject of the reporting verb.

She said to me, "I will show my book to my brother myself."

*She told me that she would show her book to her brother herself.*

→ Second persons are changed according to the object of the reporting verb.

She said to me, "Will you show your book to your brother yourself?"

*She asked me if I would show my book to my brother myself.*

→ Third persons do not change.

She said to me, "Will he show his book to his brother himself?"

*She asked me if he would show his book to his brother himself.*

→ 'We' doesn't change if it refers to mankind.

She said, "*We* are mortal."

She said that *we* are mortal.

→ If 'this' or 'these' is used as a pronoun in sentences, 'this' changes to 'it' and 'these' changes to 'they' or 'them' in reported speech.

He said to me, "I can do *this*."

He told me that he could do *it*.

He said, "I bought *these* from a supermarket."

He said he had bought *them* from a supermarket.

→ If 'this' or 'these' is used as an adjective in sentences, it changes to 'the' in reported speech.

He said, "*This* book belongs to Anu."

He said that *the* book belonged to Anu.



## Grammar Practice: Fill in the blanks with suitable personal pronouns.

He said to me, "My brother can help your brother."  
 She said to me, "My brother can help your brother."  
 I said to him, "My brother can help your brother."  
 Anu said to Ali, "My brother can help your brother."

She said to him, "What are you doing for me?"  
 He said to them, "What are you doing for me?"  
 I said to her, "What are you doing for me?"

He said to her, "I am going to meet your friend."  
 She said to me, "I am going to meet your friend."  
 He said to me, "I am going to meet your friend."

She said to me, "Your dress is better than mine."  
 He said to me, "Your dress is better than mine."  
 She said to Ali, "Your dress is better than mine."

He said to me, "Will you give me your notebook?"  
 She said to me, "Will you give me your notebook?"  
 He said to her, "Will you give me your notebook?"

He told me that.....brother could help.....brother.  
 She told me that ..... brother could help.....brother.  
 I told him that.....brother could help.....brother.  
 Anu told Ali that.....brother could help.....brother.

She asked him what.....was doing for.....  
 He asked them what.....were doing for.....  
 I asked her what.....was doing for.....

He told her that.....was going to meet.....friend.  
 She told me that.....was going to meet.....friend.  
 He told me that.....was going to meet.....friend.

She told me that.....dress was better than.....  
 He told me that.....dress was better than.....  
 She told Ali that.....dress was better than.....

He asked me if.....would give.....notebook.  
 She asked me if.....would give.....notebook.  
 He asked her if.....would give.....notebook.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Rules of Agreement

→ *There is a list of words and phrases connected with time and place that may need to be changed in order for the reported message to make sense.*

### Places:

here	there
this	that
these	those
come	go

### Time:

now	then
today	that day
tonight	that night
this week	that week
tomorrow	the following day/the next day /the day after
next week	the following week /the next week /the week after
yesterday	the previous day /the day before
ago	before
last Saturday	the previous Saturday / the Saturday before
next Saturday	the following Saturday/the next Saturday
the day before yesterday	two days before
last year, last month, last week	the year/month/week before
last week, month, year	the previous week, month, year
three days, weeks, months, ...years ago	three days, weeks, months, .....years before
the day after tomorrow	in two days
next week/month/year	the following week/month/year
this morning/afternoon/evening/night	that morning/afternoon/evening/ night

He said, "I will visit her tomorrow."  
*He said that he would visit her the following day.*  
 He said, "I went to the park yesterday."  
*He said that he had gone to the park the day before.*  
 She said, "I like this town."  
*She told me that she liked that town.*



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Reporting Various Types of Sentences

Each type of sentence takes different connectives and reporting verbs.

**Assertive/statements** → *Reporting verb: said + no object/ told + object*  
*Connective: that*  
*Sentence structure: subject + verb + .....full stop*

She said, "I live here."	She said that she lived there.
She said, "I do not live here."	She said that she did not live there.
He said to me, "I will help you."	He told me that he would help me.

**Interrogative/questions** → *Reporting verb: asked/wanted to know/enquired*  
*Connective: if/whether (yes/no) and WH word (WH)*  
*Sentence structure: subject + verb + .....full stop*

He asked, "Do you know this man?"	He asked me if I knew that man.
He asked her, "Will you help me?"	He asked her whether she would help him.
He asked, "What's the matter?"	He asked what the matter was.
He asked me, "What are you doing?"	He asked me what I was doing.

**Imperatives/commands** → *Reporting verb: told, requested, advised, asked, warned, begged, forbade, ordered, urged, reminded, etc.*  
*Connective: to*  
*Sentence structure: to + verb + .....full stop*

She said, "Go to your room."	She told me to go to my room.
The doctor said, "Walk a mile a day."	The doctor advised to walk a mile a day.
She said, "Buy some bread, please."	She asked me to buy some bread.
He ordered, "Stay where you are!"	He ordered them to stay where they were.

**Optative** → *Reporting verb: wished, blessed, prayed, cursed, bade, etc.*  
*Connective: that*  
*Sentence structure: subject + verb + .....full stop*

He said, "May you pass your exam!"	He wished me that I might pass my exam.
She said to him, "May you go to hell!"	She cursed him that he might go to hell.
They said, "May God help us!"	They prayed that God might help them.

**Exclamatory** → *Reporting verb: exclaimed with joy, exclaimed with sorrow, exclaimed with surprise, etc.*  
*Connective: that*  
*Sentence structure: subject + verb + .....full stop*

He said, "Hurrah! We've won the match."

*He exclaimed with joy that they had won the match.*

She said, "Alas! His father is dead."

*She exclaimed with sorrow that his father was dead.*

He said, "Wow! What a nice goal!"

*He exclaimed with joy that it was a nice goal. (He exclaimed that it was a nice goal.)*

He said, "How clever she is!"

*He exclaimed that she was very clever.*

### Sentences with 'LET'

Let us (proposed/suggested..... that ..... should)

He said, "Let us go to watch a movie."

He proposed/suggested that they should go to watch a movie.

Let without 'us' (ordered/requested..... to let..... or that..... might be allowed to)

He said, "Let me go."

He ordered (requested) to let him go.

He ordered (requested) that he might be allowed to go.

Let (assumption) (assumed..... that..... might be)

The teacher said, "Let ABC be an angle of ninety."

The teacher assumed that ABC might be an angle of ninety.

### Some other types of sentences

#### Sentences with question tags

*Remove questions tags and use 'asked' or 'wanted to know' as a reporting verb and 'whether' or 'if' as a connective.*

He said to me, "You're going to Pokhara, aren't you?"

He asked me whether I was going to Pokhara.

I said to him, "She wrote this letter, didn't she?"

I asked him whether she had written the letter.

#### Sentences with 'Sir' or 'Madam'

*Remove these words with 'respectfully' and use the reporting verb and the connective on the basis of the types of the sentences.*

Tina said to the Principal, "Madam, have I passed the final exam?"

Tina asked the Principal respectfully whether she had passed the final exam.

He said to his boss, "Sir, I will type this letter myself."

He told his boss respectfully that he would type the letter himself.

#### Sentences with 'please, kindly' and emphatic 'do'

*Remove these words and use 'requested' as the reporting verb and 'to' as the connective.*

He said to me, "Kindly sing a song."

He requested me to sing a song.

She said to them, "Do come to the party on time."

She requested them to come to the party on time.



**Grammar Practice:** Change into indirect speech.

1. "I'm going to Dharan next week."  
He said that ..... to Dharan ..... week.
2. "They haven't spoken to their parents for six months."  
She said that they ..... to their parents for six months.
3. "Sudha doesn't want to go out with me."  
He said that Sudha ..... to go out with .....
4. "You'll have to be here at 3 o'clock this afternoon."  
She told me that I ..... at 3 o'clock .....
5. "I visited Pokhara three weeks ago."  
I said that I ..... three weeks .....
6. "You must bring me the money tomorrow."  
He told us that ..... the money .....
7. "I often go to the park."  
She told us that she often ..... to the park.
8. "I'm going to do it now if you'll let me."  
She told him that she ..... if he .....
9. "I don't know where he can be."  
She said that she ..... where .....
10. "I must go to the bank."  
She told me that ..... to the bank.
11. "He may refuse to do it."  
She said that ..... to do it.
12. "You should call him."  
She said that I .....
13. "Did you go there alone?"  
He asked her if ..... there alone.
14. "Did you go to the USA in 2005?"  
He asked if ..... to the USA in 2005.
15. "How long have you been in Darjeeling?"  
He asked her how long ..... in Darjeeling.
16. "When did you visit Delhi?"  
I asked him when ..... Delhi.

*Speaking Practice:* Report what Anu and the receptionist said.

"Good morning, Anu."  
"I'll just let Mr. Rai know you're here."  
"Well, Mr. Rai's room is on the first floor."  
"You can go to meet him."



"Good morning. My name is Anu Shrestha."  
"I'm from Kirtipur."  
"I'm here to meet Mr. Rai, the manager of this hotel."  
"I have an appointment."  
"He's expecting me."



**Speaking Practice:** Report the following dialogue.

Mother: What are you doing, Riya?  
 Riya: I'm making a sandwich.  
 Mother: Riya! Don't eat anything before dinner!  
 Riya: Mom, I'm starving!  
 Mother: Have some cheese, but don't eat the cake.  
 Riya: There isn't any cheese left. I ate it yesterday.  
 Mother: Go to the store and buy some more.  
 Riya: Okay, I will. I'll go when I finish my homework. But I'll have one piece of cake.  
 Mother: All right. What a clever girl!



**Test Yourself**



Write the sentences in the indirect speech using the prompts given:

1. "I don't like classical music very much."  
*Jiya told me*.....
2. "Are you a teacher?"  
*She asked me*.....
3. "Be quiet, children."  
*The librarian told*.....
4. "What's your name?"  
*The woman asked me*.....
5. "Don't telephone me again or I'll call the police."  
*He threatened*.....
6. "Let's eat something and then go for a walk!"  
*She suggested*.....
7. Anuj said to me, "What a nice dress you have bought!"  
*Anuj exclaimed with surprise*.....
8. "Yes, it was me who ate all the cake."  
*She admitted*.....
9. "I think you'd better drink this medicine."  
*The doctor advised*.....
10. "When does the bus leave?"  
*I asked*.....
11. "May you pass the SEE exam with good marks!"  
*My mother blessed me*.....
12. "Will I pass my exam?"  
*Deepa wondered*.....
13. "Did you invite Jenny to your party?"  
*He asked me*.....
14. "Yes, I'll come with you."  
*He agreed*.....
15. "I'll help you, I promise."  
*He promised*.....

 **Test Yourself** 

Write the sentences in the indirect speech using the prompts given:

1. "Are you doing anything at the weekend?"  
*Kunal asked Nina*.....
2. "Are you enjoying yourself?"  
*He asked us*.....
3. "Do you live near your family?"  
*He asked her*.....
4. "Does your father work here?"  
*She asked me*.....
5. "Don't be late, Neha."  
*Neha's father told*.....
6. "How did you get to school?"  
*He asked his friend*.....
7. "I have to go out now."  
*Pukar said to Riya*.....
8. "I would like to go out for dinner."  
*Mother said to Father*.....
9. "The government will have to resolve the problem of unemployment."  
*A councillor argued*.....
10. "We can save energy by using solar power."  
*The scientist claimed*.....
11. "Why can't you help me with my homework?"  
*Mona asked Ravi*.....
12. "Where have you been all night?"  
*My parents wanted to know*.....
13. "I'll definitely return it tomorrow."  
*He promised*.....
14. "Please fasten your seatbelts before taking off."  
*The stewardess requested*.....
15. "What a clever boy you are!"  
*Anjali exclaimed with surprise*.....

 **Test Yourself** 

Change the following sentences into indirect speech:

1. Taniya said to Bipin, "I'm sorry to come around without phoning you first."
2. The secretary said to the manager, "That remark was uncalled-for."
3. Miruza said to me, "Why did you come to Kathmandu?"
4. "I received a letter from my friend," said Anita.
5. He said, "Children must obey their teachers."
6. "I am working in a factory," his father said.
7. He said, "Let me read this book."
8. Angela said to me, "May God bless you with long life and prosperity!"
9. Imran said, "She was sick last week."

10. He said to me, "Tell me your name."
11. Sudha said, "I am writing a letter now."
12. "I've read the book you lent me," said Kiran to Pukar.
13. They said, "It's getting late. We really have to go."
14. She said, "May all your dreams come true!"
15. "May God look over you from the heavens!" said Angela.
16. Anita said, "What a stupid man he is!"
17. Pukar said to Anita, "How wonderful you look!"
18. He said to me, "Please send our best wishes to Anju."
19. Kunal said to me, "Did you receive my message?"
20. Suman said, "Ouch! My stomach is paining."
21. "I have finished my essay," Alan said.
22. Ravi said to me, "Forgive me for coming in the middle of your meeting."
23. "We've already cleaned all the rooms," reported the servant.
24. Binod said, "Have a nice tenth birthday, Anu."
25. "I didn't do it," insisted Tina.



### Test Yourself



#### Change the following sentences into indirect speech:

1. She said to me, "May you defeat your rivals!"
2. I said to her, "You must buy it for your brother."
3. Gokul said, "I've enjoyed meeting you again."
4. "I can't go with you to the park," Binod said.
5. Sudha said, "I'll talk to you on Saturday."
6. "I should study harder," Anu said.
7. Kiran said, "It may rain tomorrow."
8. "The students in our class can speak many languages," Anjali said.
9. Anita said to Kunal, "How long have you lived in the United States?"
10. Dora said to Anu, "Where do you live?"
11. "I've got to leave early," apologized Mr. Adhikari.
12. Riya said, "I'll see you some time next month."
13. Yogen said to them, "Please wait here till I return."
14. "Who has painted this picture?" asked Jenny.
15. Tina said to Aryan, "Leave your coat in the hall."
16. He said to me, "Give me your phone number."
17. "I took a lot of English classes," Jiya said.
18. "Bibha and Atul liked the movie," Mina said.
19. She said, "Don't shut the door."
20. Deepak said, "What a fool I am!"
21. Alan said, "What a dreadful snake it is!"
22. Habiba said, "I have already written three letters."
23. He said to me, "Do you like it?"
24. "Oh! What a lovely weather!" said the teacher.
25. Ajeeta said, "Have a good time at the party."



## Test Yourself



### Rewrite the following sentences choosing the correct alternatives:

1. “.....,” said Kalpana. (To go and sleep, Not to go and sleep, Go and sleep)
2. He requested me.....(that I can have my seat, that he could have his seat, to have my seat)
3. “Have you seen Sita?” He asked me.....Sita. (if I had seen, if he had seen, if she had seen)
4. “Let’s arrange a picnic.” Kamini proposed..... a picnic. (to arrange, to let arrange, that they should arrange)
5. Shristi asked me if I had been unwell since the previous day. Its original speech is: Shristi said to me, “..... unwell since yesterday?” (Have you been, Were you, Have I been)
6. He said that he.....his favourite teacher. (had met, has met, meets)
7. Mother said, “Do you know why.....?” (did I cry, do I cry, I cried)
8. “Let’s give a party,” Father suggested.....a party. (give, to give, that they should give)
9. Prof Sharma requested his colleagues to do what he said. Prof Sharma said to his colleagues, “..... what I say.” (Do you do, Will you please do, Do)
10. He told us that he.....to the UK the year before. (has been , had been, will have been)
11. The manager declared that he had granted allowances for all the previous week. The manager said, “ I.....allowances for all the last week.” (granted, had granted, have granted)
12. The reported speech of “I lost my cell phone yesterday.” is : He said that .....(he lost his cell phone yesterday, he had lost his cell phone yesterday, he had lost his cell phone the day before)
13. The villager said to the tourist, ‘.....?’ He replied that he was from Nigeria. (where are you from, where he was from, where you are from)
14. Suresh said to his wife, “.....” is the direct speech of ‘She would follow what he said.’ (You will follow what I say, I will follow what you say, She will follow what I say)



## Test Yourself



### A. Complete the sentences in reported speech:

Ravi : I want to tell you something about my visit to Pokhara.

Anu : What does he say?

You : He says that he wants to tell us something about his visit to Pokhara.

Ravi : I went to Pokhara in July.

Anu : What does he say?

You : He says that.....

Ravi : My parents went with me.  
Anu : What does he say?  
You : He says that.....

Ravi : We spent two weeks in Pokhara.  
Anu : What does he say?  
You : He says that.....

Ravi : Pokhara is a tourist centre.  
Anu : What does he say?  
You : He says that.....

Ravi : I visited many places of my interest with my parents.  
Anu : What does he say?  
You : He says that.....

Ravi : I love Pokhara.  
Anu : What does he say?  
You : He says that.....

**B. Complete the sentences in reported speech:**

Ravi : I want to tell you something about my visit to Pokhara.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that he wanted to tell us something about his visit to Pokhara.

Ravi : I went to Pokhara in July.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that.....

Ravi : My parents went with me.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that.....

Ravi : We spent two weeks in Pokhara.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that.....

Ravi : Pokhara is a tourist centre.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that.....

Ravi : I visited many places of my interest with my parents.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that.....

Ravi : I love Pokhara.  
Anu : What did he say?  
You : He said that.....

# Causative Verbs

## Act out the conversation.

Anup: I absolutely like my English teacher. He always *makes us do* a lot of things to improve our English.

Rahul: But my English teacher is very strict. He always complains about our pronunciation. He always *makes us pronounce* difficult words.

Anup: Isn't it good?

Rahul: Yes, it is. But when we don't know the answer, he *makes us stand up* on the bench.

Anup: Really! Does he give a lot of homework?

Rahul: Yes, and when we don't complete all, he then *makes us stay* late after school. Anup, can I ask a favour of you?

Anup: Sure.

Rahul: I need to complete my project work but my computer isn't working.

Anup: Why don't you *get Ravi to fix* your computer? He's very good at it.

Rahul: But I'm planning to *have somebody fix* my computer whenever there is a problem.

Anup: You can contact a computer maintenance center to hire a person. They'll visit you when you contact them. You can *have your computer repaired* and you can also *get anything designed or typed*.

Rahul: Really! That's a good idea.



Here the verbs *get*, *have* and *make* are causative verbs.

A causative has the meaning of 'someone causes someone to do something'.

Some other verbs that are used causatively are: *let*, *help*, *cause*, *persuade*, etc.

➤ *Get* gives the idea of persuasion, *have* is asking, and *make* is forcing or strong convincing.

Why don't you *get* Ravi to fix your computer? (It means to convince or persuade Ravi to do the job.)

He *makes* us stand up on the bench. (It gives an idea of forcing.)

I'm planning to *have* somebody fix my computer. (You do not need to persuade for it, rather you have to pay for it.)

➤ *These causative verbs can come in any tenses.*

He	makes/make/will make/is making/has made/made	somebody	cook food.
	gets/get/will get/is getting/has got/got		to cook food.
	has/have/had/will have/is having/has had		cook food.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Uses of Causative Verbs

### Make

'Make' as a causative verb follows the structure "**sub + make + agent + v<sup>1</sup> + ...**" that means 'to force someone to do something'.

My teacher made me apologize for what I had said.

Did somebody make you wear that ugly hat?

She made her children do their homework.

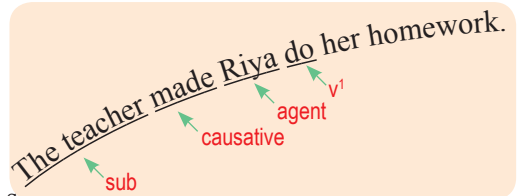
Don't make me tell a lie.

The teacher made the students stay after class.

The Principal made Robin repair the damage to the science lab.

*In the passive structure, the causative verb 'make' comes with 'to + v<sup>1</sup>'.*

The students were made to stay after class by the teacher.



### Get

'Get' as a causative verb follows the structure "**sub + get + agent + to + v<sup>1</sup> + ...**" that means 'to convince someone to do something' or 'to trick or persuade someone to do something'.

She got her son to buy a cheap dress.

How can parents get their children to read more?

The health workers are trying to get people to stop smoking.

Did you get Anu to clean the room properly?

### Have

'Have' as a causative verb follows the structure "**sub + have + agent + v<sup>1</sup> + ...**" that means 'to give someone the responsibility to do something or to ask someone to do something'. It expresses the idea that the person wants something to be done for them and they do not need to persuade because they are paying someone to do something or they are in charge or they have power.

Dr. Basnet had his nurse take the patient's temperature.

I had the mechanic check the brakes.

She had her children cook dinner for her.

I had my brother hang the wallpaper.

### Get/Have something done

Sometimes 'get someone to do something' or 'get something done' is interchangeable with 'have someone do something' or 'get something done', but there is a little difference between these expressions.

#### ➔ Have something done

I had the mechanic **check** my brakes.

(I asked the mechanic to check the brakes.)

I had my hair **cut** last Saturday.

She had the car **washed** at the weekend.

Neha had her house **painted**.

#### ➔ Get something done

I got the mechanic **to check** my brakes.

(At first the mechanic didn't think it was necessary, but I convinced him to check the brakes.)

I really must get my eyes **tested**.

(I'm sure I need glasses.)

She got her room **cleaned** yesterday.

They will get their work **completed** soon.

He gets his letter **typed** neatly.

sub + get/have + object + v<sup>3</sup>  
 sub + get + agent + to + v<sup>3</sup> + obj  
 sub + have + agent + v<sup>3</sup> + obj



## Test Yourself

1

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of the verbs given in the brackets:

1. We should get people..... some trees in their own areas. (plant)
2. Habiba had her house..... last week. (paint)
3. Pemba was made..... a sweet song. (sing)
4. I made my father..... a new pair of trousers for me. (buy)
5. Imran has got many books..... (publish)
6. I have to get my TV-set..... (repair)
7. Mother was making her child..... that time. (sleep)
8. Why are you making these children..... on the benches? (stand)
9. I stopped my bike at the gas station to have the tank..... (fill)
10. Father made me..... the ladder. (wash)
11. Who has got all this..... without my permission? (do)
12. His father went to the bank to have a cheque..... (cash)
13. She got her friend..... her dress. (stitch)
14. Did your mom get your lunch..... for you before you left for school? (prepare)
15. Kumar got the jacket..... (wash)



## Test Yourself

2

Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of the verbs given in the brackets:

1. Pemba didn't want to go to the park, but his mom made him..... (go, to go, gone)
2. I had my hair..... in a completely new style. (cut, to cut, cutting)
3. Can you make him.....? (laugh, to laugh, laughed)
4. Why did he have the tree.....? (to fell, felled, fallen)
5. Have your assistant..... these letters immediately! (to send, sent, send)
6. I..... him to sing a song. (get, make, have)
7. The master made me..... the room. (sweep, to sweep, swept)
8. The teacher got the students..... writing. (stopped, to stop, stop)
9. The doctor had an assistant..... for his help. (appoint, to appoint, appointed)
10. I usually have my car..... by a mechanic because I can't do it. (fixed, to fix, fix)
11. Please have your secretary..... me the information. (fax, to fax, faxed)
12. Sudha has her socks..... everyday. (wash, to wash, washed)
13. I had my hair..... last night. (trim, trimmed, to trim)
14. Anil gets me..... his bag. (to carry, carry, carried)
15. The teacher made those boys..... down. (kneel, to kneel, knelt)
16. He made me..... the Bible. (to read, read, reading)
17. You can have her..... your sheets. (to clean, clean, cleaned)
18. I need to get a mechanic..... my car. (to overhaul, overhaul, overhauled)
19. He had me..... a pail of water. (fetch, to fetch, fetched)
20. I..... her and apologize. (made him to call, made him called, made him call)
21. The clever crow got some men..... the snake. (to kill, kill, killed)
22. Rity got me..... this matter. (write, written, to write)
23. I made her..... me. (to follow, followed, follow)
24. He..... everything done in time. (get, make, has)



Rewrite the following sentences choosing the best alternatives from the brackets:

1. I had my wallet..... yesterday. (stolen, stole, to steal)
2. Sita got her shoes..... (shine, to shine, shined)
3. Mother made me..... rice. (to cook, cook, cooked)
4. I have to get a letter..... (to type, type, typed)
5. Did you get your photos.....? (to take, take, taken)
6. My father got me..... in the garden. (work, to work, works)
7. She..... her father to buy a cell phone for her. (has, makes, will get)
8. Dr. Adhikari made the nurse..... the patient's condition overnight. (monitor, to monitor, monitored)
9. Bhupal didn't want to wash his car, so with a little smooth talk he got his friend..... it for him. (wash, to wash, washed)
10. I'm going to have Suman..... my computer to see what is wrong. (look at, to look at, looked at)
11. One of my teeth really hurt, so I went to the dentist to have it..... (remove, removed, to remove)
12. Sabnam..... that he wouldn't tell anyone. (made him promised, made him promise, promised to make)
13. The movie..... sad. (made to feel, made him feel, made him to feel)
14. Ashoka, the Great, got many trees planted and many wells..... in his empire for the welfare of his subjects. (dig, dug, to dig)
15. Did you have all the arrangements..... before the guests arrived? (make, made, to make)
16. My teacher made me..... my homework because he wasn't happy with my handwriting. (redo, to redo, redone)
17. The students wanted to submit written documents but the teacher made them..... an oral presentation as well. (give, to give, given)
18. I have my hair..... every two weeks. (cut, to cut, cutting)
19. I had my jacket..... yesterday. (clean, to clean, cleaned)
20. Did you have your roof.....? (repair, to repair, repaired)
21. When are you going to have your bad tooth..... out? (take, to take, taken)
22. He had his car..... regularly so it never broke down. (service, to service, serviced)
23. They had it..... by the same person who decorated their old house. (do, to do, done)
24. He had his bags..... onto the train by a porter. (load, to load, loaded)
25. The robbers made the passengers..... on the floor. (lie, to lie, lain)
26. She made me..... the vegetables. (eat, to eat, eaten)
27. They had the posters..... down. (take, took, taken)
28. She is planning to get the workmen..... my furniture. (move, to move, moved)
29. I had a tattoo..... on my lower back. (do, to do, done)
30. I'd have my garden weeded and my lawn..... (mow, to mow, mowed)
31. My computer is not working, I need to get it..... (to fix, fix, fixed)
32. Sunil got Anu..... the kitchen. (to clean up, clean up, cleaned up)
33. My sister had Anup..... the carpet. (vacuum, to vacuum, vacuumed)
34. How often do you..... nowadays? (have your hair cut, get your hair to cut, have cut your hair)
35. I spilled some sauce on my suit. Now I need to get my suit..... (clean, to clean, cleaned)

Read the following news report and look at the underlined forms of verbs.

## Thousands Affected by Koshi Flood

The Government of Nepal estimates approximately 70,000 people of Sunsari district of eastern Nepal are affected due to the recent raging floods stretched from the Koshi River after the dam collapsed on 18<sup>th</sup> August, 2008.

The Government's Detailed Damage Assessment process is ongoing. The process is expected to be completed by the end of next week. There are approximately 9 Wards still to be verified in the district.

The Government of Nepal compensation package for the flood-affected households is expected to be released soon. The Poverty Alleviation Fund will be used to support compensation for the flood-affected households.

The Minister for Local Development and the Sunsari Local District Officer (LDO) inspected reparation works on the Koshi River breach during a recent visit. The Minister met with Dam Project Director, Site Engineer and others. The LDO observed that at the current rate of progress the dam reconstruction will not be completed by March, when the river water levels are expected to rise seasonally. This delay in the repair of the dam increases the risk of re-displacement for the Koshi flood-affected population. A contingency plan will be developed in response to the likelihood of re-displacement due to flooding.



In the above text, the underlined verb forms are in the passive.

There are two forms of verbs- active and passive.

➤ When the subject of the verb is doing the action, we say the verb is **active**.

They will use the Poverty Alleviation Fund to support compensation.

Shakespeare wrote Hamlet.

Anjali can type this letter.

Clouds hid the sun. (active)

The sun was hidden by clouds. (passive)

➤ When the position of subject and object is changed and the object becomes the subject, we say the verb is **passive**.

The Poverty Alleviation Fund will be used to support compensation.

Hamlet was written by Shakespeare.

This letter can be typed by Anjali.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Structures of Active and Passive

**Active** : subject + (auxiliary) + main verb + object

**Passive** : object + auxiliary verb + past participle (v<sup>3</sup>) + by + subject

### What are the changes?

⇒ *The position of the subject and the object needs to change.*

Anu collected the rubbish.

He will invite us.

The rubbish was collected by Anu.

We will be invited by him.

⇒ *Active sentences may or may not have auxiliary verbs, but passive sentences often come with auxiliary verbs.*

Anu collected the rubbish.

Anu is collecting the rubbish.

(no auxiliary verb)

(auxiliary verb)

The rubbish was collected by Anu.

The rubbish is being collected by Anu.

(auxiliary verb)

(auxiliary verb)

⇒ *Main verbs are changed to their past participle forms (v<sup>3</sup>).*

Anu **collects** the rubbish.

The rubbish is **collected** by Anu.

Anu is **collecting** the rubbish.

The rubbish is being **collected** by Anu.

Anu has **collected** the rubbish.

The rubbish has been **collected** by Anu.

Anu **collected** the rubbish.

The rubbish was **collected** by Anu.

Anu will **collect** the rubbish.

The rubbish will be **collected** by Anu.

Anu has to **collect** the rubbish.

The rubbish has to be **collected** by Anu.

⇒ *The subject of the active sentence is generally placed after 'by' and some other prepositions.*

Anu **collects** the rubbish.

The rubbish is **collected** by Anu.

satisfy/please/cover/fill + with  
contain/interest + in

marry/know/oblige + to  
surprise/shock + at

The results surprised me.

*I was surprised at the results.*

He knows me.

*I am known to him.*

This book interested Nina.

*Nina was interested in this book.*

The bottle contains pure milk.

*Pure milk is contained in the bottle.*

Our work pleased her.

*She was pleased with our work.*

Her explanation did not satisfy her teacher.

*Her teacher was not satisfied with her explanation.*

### Grammar Help

Only transitive verbs have passive forms.

**Active** : She wrote a letter.

**Passive** : A letter was written by her.

*She sleeps well.*

It has no passive voice because the verb 'sleep' is an intransitive verb.

➔ 'By + subject' is omitted if the subject is unknown or predictable or not important.

People speak English all over the world.

*English is spoken all over the world.*

Somebody stole his book last week.

*His book was stolen last week.*

They grow tea in Illam.

*Tea is grown in Illam.*



**Grammar Practice:** Write the correct sentence numbers under the proper headings.

1. He was covered in mud from head to foot.
2. Who built the Taj Mahal?
3. A strange animal was seen in the lake.
4. His bicycle was stolen last week.
5. Sue puts the rucksack on the floor.
6. They invited ten friends to the party.
7. The police caught the thieves yesterday.
8. The road outside my house is being dug up.
9. The rebels will be called on to stop fighting.
10. He never does his homework.
11. All the clocks were set forward.
12. They will send the parcel today.
13. It is said to be important.
14. A lorry ran over the old dog.
15. Miss Roy read out the passage loud.
16. This play was written by Shakespeare.
17. She was bitten by a dog yesterday.
18. Nobody ate the food.
19. They have eaten all the food.
20. They can draw this picture easily.
21. They think that he was an artist.
22. Is Priya watering the flowers?
23. His friend was not feeding the dogs.
24. Anjali is taking a picture of her friend.
25. The temple has been built twenty years ago.
26. I will have taken the dog for a walk.
27. Someone showed the child how to use the telephone.
28. The accident was witnessed by the children.
29. All his postcards were stolen last week.
30. Could you feed the dog?
31. Did your brother draw this circle?
32. The construction workers are making street repairs all month long.

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
2,	1,



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Uses of Active and Passive

- ⇒ We normally use the active form of the verb when the agent or the doer of the action comes first, and is made the subject of the verb. The object (the person or thing affected by the action) comes after the verb. An active sentence follows the normal structures of tenses.

Shakespeare wrote Hamlet.

Here, the speaker is talking about Shakespeare and the extra information is that he wrote Hamlet.

James Cook discovered Australia.

Here the speaker is concentrating on James Cook, who discovered Australia. He is more interested in James Cook.

The villagers built the temple in 1990.

It is the doer of the action.

Susan drew this picture.

It is the doer of the action.

- ⇒ The passive is used when we want to focus attention on the person or thing affected by the action. The doer of the action or the agent generally comes after 'by' preposition or is not mentioned.

Hamlet was written by Shakespeare.

Here, the speaker is talking about Hamlet and the extra information is that it was written by Shakespeare.

Australia was discovered by James Cook.

Here the speaker is concentrating on Australia, not on the person who discovered it.

The temple was built in 1990.

It is not the doer of the action.

The picture was drawn by Susan.

It is not the doer of the action.



### Grammar Practice: Choose the right forms of the verbs given in the brackets.

- The Eiffel Tower..... in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. (built, was built)
- Lots of houses..... by the earthquake. (destroyed, were destroyed)
- The tower..... from here. (cannot see, cannot be seen)
- The library ..... by Tina's uncle. (is being designed, is designing)
- She..... him a box of chocolates. (promised, was promised)
- This road..... because of snow. (has already blocked, has already been blocked)
- They..... me 10 rupees change at the shop. (gave, were given)
- The gift..... in nice paper. (wrapped, is wrapped)
- The committee..... on this issue. (decided, was decided)
- We..... our homework. (have done, have been done)
- The government..... a road right in their village. (built, was built)
- A new student..... in the form. (must fill, must be filled)
- Somebody..... the factory last Sunday. (broke into, was broken into)
- This room..... blue. (has painted, has been painted)
- The guide..... the Natural History Museum to the tourists. (pointed out, was pointed out)
- The meat..... for far too long before we started dinner. (had cooked, had been cooked)
- The Singha Durbar..... in three years. (built, was built)
- The design of the Singha Durbar..... by a British architect. (was executed, executed)



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Subject and Object in the Passive

- While changing the position of the subject and the object, we need to change the forms of pronouns. Nouns do not change.

Peter killed a snake.

*A snake was killed by Peter. (by him)*

Riya is cooking food now.

*Food is being cooked by Riya. (by her)*

She invited us to her birthday party.

*We were invited to her birthday party by her. (by she)*

- The subjects like 'people, somebody, nobody, everybody, someone, no one, etc' are not mentioned after 'by' preposition.

Somebody wrote this letter last month.      This letter was written last month.

People worship God in every country.      God is worshipped in every country.

Nobody can climb this mountain so easily. This mountain cannot be climbed so easily.

- If the speaker doesn't know who the agent is or doesn't want to mention who the agent is or if the agent can be understood by the action, the agent is not mentioned after 'by' preposition.

His bicycle was stolen last month.

These crops are generally grown in winter.

The bank robbers were arrested last week.

- The prepositions with verbs are written with the verbs.

He looks after these boys.

*These boys are looked after by him.*

The police have called in the boy to identify the criminal.

*The boy has been called in by the police to identify the criminal.*

- Generally the object with 'a/an/any' in the negative sentence changes to 'no'.

He didn't speak a word.

*No word was spoken by him.*

Nobody mentioned anything to me about it.

*Nothing was mentioned to me about it.*

- When the verb comes with two objects, one of the two objects becomes the subject, the other one remains an object. Which object to transform into a subject depends on what you want to put the focus on.

Mr. Singh taught <sup>obj 1</sup>us <sup>obj 2</sup>English.

We were taught English by Mr. Singh.      English was taught to us by Mr. Singh.

Rita wrote <sup>obj 1</sup>a letter <sup>obj 2</sup>to me.

A letter was written to me by Rita.      I was written a letter by Rita.

Aryan will ask <sup>obj 1</sup>me <sup>obj 2</sup>a question.

I will be asked a question by Aryan.      A question will be asked to me by Aryan.



**Grammar Practice:** Complete the following passive sentences.

1. Sudha told him the good news.  
*He*.....  
*The good news*.....
2. Anjali will give you some advice.  
*You*.....  
*Some advice*.....
3. I taught them English.  
*They*.....  
*English*.....
4. We will buy them a new television.  
*They*.....  
*A new television*.....
5. Priya asked the students their names.  
*The students*.....  
*Their names*.....
6. I will buy you a postcard.  
*You*.....  
*A postcard*.....
7. Neha explained the problem to her mother.  
*The problem*.....  
*Her mother*.....
8. Kunal didn't tell me the answer.  
*I*.....  
*The answer*.....
9. He may pay the money to Riya next week.  
*The money*.....  
*Riya*.....
10. Atul lent me his bicycle.  
*I*.....  
*His bicycle*.....
11. She passed the sugar to me.  
*The sugar*.....  
*I*.....
12. John bought this dress for her.  
*This dress*.....  
*She*.....
13. I have promised Milan a watch.  
*Milan*.....  
*A watch*.....
14. Grandmother knitted Mona a sweater.  
*Mona*.....  
*A sweater*.....
15. I can show you a trick.  
*You*.....  
*A trick*.....
16. Mother peeled Anu an orange.  
*Anu*.....  
*An orange*.....



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Verbs in the Passive Sentence

➔ The main verb is always in past participle form ( $v^3$ ) and the auxiliary verb is always be-verbs in the passive sentence. We choose the auxiliary verbs for the passive sentences on the basis of tense and modality.

TYPES	TENSE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Simple tenses	Present	<i>sub + <math>v^1/v^5</math> + obj</i> Bhola washes the car. She teaches them.	<i>obj + is/am/are + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car is washed by Bhola. They are taught by her.
	Past	<i>sub + <math>v^2</math> + obj</i> Bhola washed the car. She taught them.	<i>obj + was/were + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car was washed by Bhola. They were taught by her.
	Future	<i>sub + will/shall + <math>v^1</math> + obj</i> Bhola will wash the car. She will teach them.	<i>obj + will/shall + be + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car will be washed by Bhola. They will be taught by her.
Continuous tenses	Present	<i>sub + is/am/are + <math>v^4</math> + obj</i> Bhola is washing the car. She is teaching them.	<i>obj + is/am/are + being + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car is being washed by Bhola. They are being taught by her.
	Past	<i>sub + was/were + <math>v^4</math> + obj</i> Bhola was washing the car. She was teaching them.	<i>obj + was/were + being + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car was being washed by Bhola. They were being taught by her.
	Future	<i>sub + will be/shall be + <math>v^4</math> + obj</i> Bhola will be washing the car.	(no passive construction in use)
Perfect tenses	Present	<i>sub + has/have + <math>v^3</math> + obj</i> Bhola has washed the car. She has taught them.	<i>obj + has/have + been + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car has been washed by Bhola. They have been taught by her.
	Past	<i>sub + had + <math>v^3</math> + obj</i> Bhola had washed the car. She had taught them.	<i>obj + had + been + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car had been washed by Bhola. They had been taught by her.
	Future	<i>sub + will have/shall have + <math>v^3</math> + obj</i> Bhola will have washed the car. She will have taught them.	<i>obj + will have/shall have + been + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car will have been washed by Bhola. They will have been taught by her.
Perfect continuous tenses	Present	<i>sub + has been/have been + <math>v^4</math> + obj</i> Bhola has been washing the car. She has been teaching them.	(no passive construction in use)
	Past	<i>sub + had been + <math>v^4</math> + obj</i> Bhola had been washing the car. She had been teaching them.	
	Future	<i>sub + will have been/shall have been + <math>v^4</math> + obj</i> Bhola will have been washing the car. She will have been teaching them.	
Modal verbs and others	<i>modal + <math>v^1</math></i>	<i>sub + modal + <math>v^1</math> + obj</i> Bhola may wash the car. Bhola can wash the car. Bhola must wash the car. Bhola would wash the car. She can teach them.	<i>obj + modal + be + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car may be washed by Bhola. The car can be washed by Bhola. The car must be washed by Bhola. The car would be washed by Bhola. They can be taught by her.
	<i>has to/have to/had to + <math>v^1</math></i>	<i>sub + has to + <math>v^1</math> + obj</i> Bhola has to wash the car. Bhola had to wash the car. She has to teach them.	<i>obj + has to + be + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car has to be washed by Bhola. The car had to be washed by Bhola. They have to be taught by her.
	<i>modal + have + <math>v^3</math></i>	<i>sub + modal + have + <math>v^3</math> + obj</i> Bhola may have washed the car. Bhola would have washed the car. She would have taught them.	<i>obj + modal + have + been + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car may have been washed by Bhola. The car would have been washed by Bhola. They would have been taught by her.
	<i>is going to + <math>v^1</math></i>	<i>sub + is going to + <math>v^1</math> + obj</i> Bhola is going to wash the car.	<i>obj + is going to + be + <math>v^3</math> + by + sub</i> The car is going to be washed by Bhola.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Various Passive Sentences

Sentences	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Assertive</i>	<i>sub + v + obj + ...</i> Anu closes the door. Anu does not close the door. He cannot speak English.	<i>obj + aux + v<sup>3</sup> + by + ...</i> The door is closed by Anu. The door is not closed by Anu. English cannot be spoken by him.
<i>Interrogative</i>	<i>Aux + sub + v + obj + ...?</i> Does Anu close the door? Can he write a letter?	<i>Aux + obj + v<sup>3</sup> + by + ...?</i> Is the door closed by Anu? Can a letter be written by him?
	<i>Wh + aux + sub + v + obj + ...?</i> When does Anu close the door? Who closes the door?	<i>Wh + aux + obj + v<sup>3</sup> + by + ...?</i> When is the door closed by Anu? By whom is the door closed? (Who is the door closed by?)
<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Verb + obj + ...</i> Write a letter. Close the door. Do not close the door.	<i>Let + obj + be + v<sup>3</sup> ...</i> Let a letter be written. Let the door be closed. Let the door not be closed.
	<i>Let + obj<sup>1</sup> + verb + obj<sup>2</sup> + ...</i> Let him write a letter. Let her close the door.	<i>Let + obj<sup>2</sup> + be + v<sup>3</sup> + by + obj<sup>1</sup></i> Let a letter be written by him. Let the door be closed by her.
	<i>Please/kindly + verb... </i> Please write a letter. Kindly close the door.	<i>You are requested to + v<sup>1</sup>...</i> You are requested to write a letter. You are requested to close the door.
	<i>Verb + obj... (duty)</i> Obey your parents. Help the poor.	<i>Obj + should be + v<sup>3</sup>...</i> Your parents should be obeyed. The poor should be helped.
<i>Optative</i>	<i>May + sub + verb + obj...!</i> May you defeat your rivals! May God help you!	<i>May + obj. + be + v<sup>3</sup> ...!</i> May your rivals be defeated! May you be helped!



### Grammar Practice: Fill in the correct passive verbs in the blank spaces.

#### Simple present:

Everybody loves animals.  
The teacher corrects our exercises.  
The strong wind does not blow the trees down.  
Does the gardener water the plants?  
Why do all the boys bring their books?

Animals.....by all.  
Our exercises.....by the teacher.  
The trees.....down by the strong wind.  
.....the plants.....by the gardener?  
Why.....the books.....by all the boys?

#### Present continuous:

Meera is cooking the dinner.  
Somebody is chasing the cat now.  
They are not writing letters to their parents.  
Are the children eating sweets now?  
Where is he planting trees?

The dinner.....by Meera.  
The cat.....now.  
The letters.....to their parents.  
.....sweets.....by children?  
Where.....trees.....by him?

#### Present perfect:

The rain has ruined the crops.  
She has not brought a new dress.

The crops.....by the rain.  
A new dress.....by her.

Has she lost her book?  
When have they finished the exercises?

### Simple past:

Our team won the match.  
The servant did not sweep the room.  
Did you plant these flowers?  
Why did people believe her story?

### Past continuous:

The wind was blowing the clouds away.  
Our soldiers were not repairing the bridge.  
Were the children making a noise?  
Why was she writing a letter?

### Past perfect:

The noise had frightened the dog.  
The farmer had not sown the seeds.  
Had the postman delivered the letters?  
Where had she written her name?

### Simple future:

Everyone will blame us.  
The workmen will not paint our new house.  
Shall we read all the books?  
Will the fire destroy this house?  
When will she tell us the truth?

### Future perfect:

John will have finished the work.  
He will not have written a letter.  
Will she have painted the wall?  
When will you have returned the book?

### Modal verbs in the passive

Abagni can foretell the future.  
The lazy students may not do the homework.  
Her company might give her a new office.  
Students should memorize English verbs.  
Children shouldn't smoke cigarettes.  
Students ought to learn English verbs.  
Customers must not use that door.  
She has to practise English every day.  
They have to wash the dishes every day.  
She doesn't have to clean her room.  
The students should have learned the verbs.  
The students may not have written the essay.  
When can he return the book to me?

### Imperatives and optatives

Switch off the light.  
Don't throw the rubbish here.  
Let him write a letter.  
Please fill in this form.  
Obey your elders.  
May you pass your exam!

..... her book..... by her?  
When..... the exercises..... by them?

The match..... by our team.  
The room..... the servant.  
..... these flowers..... by you?  
Why..... her story.....?

The clouds..... by the wind.  
The bridge..... by our soldiers.  
..... a noise..... by the children?  
Why..... a letter..... by her?

The dog..... by the noise.  
The seeds..... by the farmer.  
..... the letters..... by the postman?  
Where..... her name..... by her?

We..... by everyone.  
Our new house..... by the workmen.  
..... all the books..... by us?  
..... the house..... by the fire?  
When..... the truth..... to us by her?

The work..... by John.  
A letter..... by him.  
..... the wall..... by her?  
When..... the book..... by you?

The future..... by Abagni.  
The homework..... by the lazy students.  
She..... a new office by her company.  
English verbs..... by students.  
Cigarettes..... by children.  
English verbs..... by students.  
That door..... by customers.  
English..... every day by her.  
The dishes..... by them every day.  
Her room..... by her.  
The verbs..... by the students.  
The essay..... by the students.  
When..... the book..... to me by him?

Let the light.....  
Let the rubbish..... here.  
Let a letter..... by him.  
You..... to fill in this form.  
Your elders.....  
May your exams..... by you!



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Impersonal Passive

⇒ We can form impersonal passive in two ways- *IT Passive* and *Subject Passive*.

**Active:** People believe that the Prime Minister is on the point of resigning.  
first subject first verb second subject second verb

**IT Passive:** It is believed that the Prime Minister is on the point of resigning.  
first verb second subject second verb

**Subject Passive:** The Prime Minister is believed to be on the point of resigning.  
second subject first verb second verb

⇒ Impersonal passive is mainly possible with the following verbs:

assume, believe, calculate, claim, consider, discover, estimate, feel, hope, know, prove, report, rumour, say, show, think, understand, etc.

⇒ IT passive follows the following structures:

**Active:** first subject + first verb (present) + (that) + second subject + second verb + .....

**IT Passive:** It + is + first verb (v<sup>3</sup>) + (that) + subject + second verb + .....

People say that he is from Germany.

It is said that he is from Germany.

We believe that she was a nurse.

It is believed that she was a nurse.

**Active:** first subject + first verb (past) + (that) + second subject + second verb + .....

**IT Passive:** It + was + first verb (v<sup>3</sup>) + (that) + subject + second verb + .....

People said that he was from Germany.

It was said that he was from Germany.

We believed that she was a nurse.

It was believed that she was a nurse.

⇒ The first subject is removed and 'It' as a subject is added.

⇒ After 'It', use 'is' if the first verb is in the present tense, and use 'was' if the first verb is in the past tense.

⇒ You may use 'that' or you may remove it.

⇒ There is no change in the sentence that comes after 'that' clause.

⇒ Subject passive follows the following structures:

**Active:** first subject + first verb (present) + (that) + second subject + second verb (present) .....

**Subject Passive:** second subject + is/are + first verb (v<sup>3</sup>) + to + second verb (v<sup>1</sup>) + .....

People say that he is from Germany.

He is said to be from Germany.

People think that she lives in New York.

She is thought to live in New York.

**Active:** first subject + first verb (past) + (that) + second subject + second verb (past) + .....

**Subject Passive:** second subject + was/were + first verb (v<sup>3</sup>) + to + second verb (v<sup>1</sup>) + .....

People said that he was from Germany.

He was said to be from Germany.

People thought that she lived in New York.

*She was thought to live in New York.*

*Active:* first subject + first verb (present) + (that) + second subject + second verb (past) + .....

*Subject Passive:* second subject + is/are + first verb (v<sup>3</sup>) + to + have + second verb (v<sup>3</sup>) + .....  
present past

People say that he was a genius.

*He is said to have been a genius.*

present past

People think that she lived in New York.

*She is thought to have lived in New York.*

*Read some more examples to know variations in impersonal passive:*

<u>They say</u> that <u>she works hard</u> . present present	It is said that she works hard. She is said to work hard.
<u>They say</u> that <u>she played well</u> . present past	It is said that she played well. She is said to have played well.
<u>They say</u> that <u>she has played well</u> . present present	It is said that she has played well. She is said to have played well.
<u>They said</u> that <u>she had done well</u> . past past	It was said that she had done well. She was said to have done well.
<u>They believe</u> that <u>he is having an affair</u> . present present	It is believed that he is having an affair. He is believed to be having an affair.
<u>They believe</u> that <u>he has been having an affair</u> . present present	It is believed that he has been having an affair. He is believed to have been having an affair.
<u>People thought</u> that <u>he spent two years in hospital</u> . past past	It was thought that he spent two years in hospital. He was thought to spend two years in hospital.
<u>People think</u> that <u>he spent two years in hospital</u> . present past	It is thought that he spent two years in hospital. He is thought to have spent two years in hospital.
<u>They report</u> that <u>the president has a secret mistress</u> . present present	It is reported that the president has a secret mistress. The president is reported to have a secret mistress.
<u>Police have reported</u> that <u>he was a spy</u> . present past	It has been reported that he was a spy. He has been reported to have been a spy.
<u>They thought</u> that <u>he was on holiday</u> . past past	It was thought that he was on holiday. He was thought to be on holiday.
<u>People know</u> that <u>cars pollute the environment</u> . present present	It is known that cars pollute the environment. Cars are known to pollute the environment.
<u>They believe</u> that <u>Saniya will win the match</u> . present future	It is believed that Saniya will win the match. Saniya is believed to win the match.
<u>People said</u> that <u>he was jealous of her</u> . past past	It was said that he was jealous of her. He was said to be jealous of her.
<u>People say</u> that <u>he was jealous of her</u> . present past	It is said that he was jealous of her. He is said to have been jealous of her.
<u>People think</u> that <u>he made a lot of money last year</u> . present past	It is thought that he made a lot of money last year. He is thought to have made a lot of money last year.
<u>They claim</u> that <u>prices have risen again</u> . present present	It is claimed that prices have risen again. Prices are claimed to have risen again.



**Grammar Practice:** Make two types of impersonal passive.

1. Active: People believe that English is the most widely spoken language.  
It *is believed that English is the most widely spoken language.*  
English *is believed to be the most widely spoken language.*
2. Active: People believe that nuclear power stations are dangerous.  
It.....  
Nuclear power stations.....
3. Active: They say that women live longer than men.  
It.....  
Women.....
4. Active: A journalist reports that the Prime Minister is leaving for China tomorrow.  
It.....  
The Prime Minister.....
5. Active: Everybody thinks that she sings beautifully.  
It.....  
She.....
6. Active: People believed that they had killed the animals during the night.  
It.....  
They.....
7. Active: Ancient people thought that the stars would fall on them.  
It.....  
The stars.....
8. Active: They have thought the sportsmen are arriving today.  
It.....  
The sportsmen.....
9. Active: They think that the children are in school.  
It.....  
The children.....
10. Active: They say that the meeting will be held here.  
It.....  
The meeting.....
11. Active: Doctors consider that lung cancer will have a cure in the next fifty years.  
It.....  
Lung cancer.....
12. Active: People say that children are afraid of ghosts.  
It.....  
Children.....
13. Active: Everybody says that he settled the business.  
It.....  
He.....
14. Active: They rumour that the criminal is hiding in that area.  
It.....  
The criminal.....



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Some Other Passive Constructions

### ➤ Passive of infinitives

sub + want/like/love/enjoy/prefer/appreciate + ..... + to infinitive + obj (active)

sub + want/like/love/enjoy/prefer/appreciate + ..... + to be + v<sup>3</sup> ..... (passive)

He wants someone to take his photographs.  
She wants somebody to help her.  
I want someone to lift this bag.

He wants his photographs to be taken.  
She wants to be helped.  
I want this bag to be lifted.

#### Some other infinitive constructions:

She needs to be told what to do.  
No work needs to be done over the weekend.  
That child really likes to be read to by her mother.  
He didn't expect to be visited by friends.

### ➤ Passive of gerunds

sub + want/like/love/enjoy/prefer/don't mind, etc. + ..... + gerund + obj (active)

sub + want/like/love/enjoy/prefer/don't mind, etc. + ..... + being/having + v<sup>3</sup> ..... (passive)

He doesn't like people phoning him at night.  
She hates people feeding her.  
He is tired of people telling him what to do.  
I love somebody helping me.  
I hate people calling me at midnight.  
I like people taking my photographs.

He doesn't like being phoned at night.  
She hates being fed.  
He is tired of being told what to do.  
I love being helped.  
I hate being called at midnight.  
I like having my photographs taken.

#### Some other gerund constructions:

She's looking forward to being invited to the party.  
He's interested in being interviewed by the reporter.  
I won't come to the party without being invited.  
Being lost in the snow is very frightening.  
She's nervous about being charged too much.  
He's interested in being connected to cable TV.  
He wants to communicate with friends without being overheard.  
She avoided being visited by friends.  
Being punished for bad behaviour is normal at school.

### ➤ Passive of perfect infinitive

He is fortunate to have been passed the exam.  
She regrets having been visited by some friends.

### ➤ Be supposed to

I am supposed to type the letter.  
She is supposed to clean the room.  
They aren't supposed to make dessert.

The letter is supposed to be typed by me.  
The room is supposed to be cleaned by her.  
Dessert isn't supposed to be made by them.

#### It is his duty to.....

It is his duty to fence the park.  
It is her duty to type the letter.

He is supposed to fence the park.  
She is supposed to type the letter.

➤ **Some verbs have special passive forms:**

*Make and help*

In the passive, these verbs are followed by a to-infinitive.

She made him clean the house.

He was made to clean the house by her.

They are making Anu study hard.

Anu is being made to study hard.

She helped me write a letter.

I was helped to write a letter by her.

The gravity makes things drop down.

Things are made to drop down by the gravity.

*Let*

In the passive, 'let' is replaced with 'allowed to' and is followed by a to-infinitive.

The teacher let us leave early.

We were allowed to leave early.

She didn't let them play cricket.

They were not allowed to play cricket.

*See and hear*

Some verbs of the senses can be followed by either a to-infinitive or a gerund form in the passive.

They heard the baby *cry/crying*.

The baby was heard to cry/crying.

They saw him climbing over the fence.

He was seen climbing over the fence.

*'Start' with to-infinitive*

He started to learn English two years ago.

English started to be learnt two years ago by him.

His friends started to respect Milan.

Milan started to be respected by his friends.

*'Start' with gerund infinitive*

He started learning English two years ago.

English started being learnt two years ago by him.

His friends started respecting Milan.

Milan started being respected by his friends.

*advise/insist/propose/recommend/urge*

He recommended using cotton dresses.

He recommended that cotton dresses should be used.

He urged the Council to reduce the tax.

He urged that the tax should be reduced.



**Grammar Practice:** Change the following sentences into passive.

1. I love people asking me a question.
2. He wants someone to wash his clothes.
3. She hates somebody inviting her to dinner.
4. He admires people publishing his poems in papers.
5. It is his duty to pass on the message.
6. She prefers someone to cook tea for her.
7. My parents let me go out at night.
8. My mother always made me do the housework.
9. The teacher helped his students finish the exercise.
10. We could usually hear an opera singer singing upstairs.
11. The headmaster made them sit down and stay there until 5 o'clock.
12. The usher didn't let us go into the theatre.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Changing Sentences from Passive to Active

Ask yourself the following questions while changing sentences from passive to active:

➔ **What type of sentence is it?**

*Each type of sentence has its own active and passive structure. You need to recognize the type of the passive sentence and think of its active structure.*

A letter was written by her. (assertive-affirmative)

A letter cannot be written by her. (assertive-negative)

Is a letter being written by her? (interrogative)

When has a letter been written by her? (interrogative)

Let a letter be written. (imperative)

➔ **Is there the agent after 'by' preposition or not?**

Some trees are being planted by Mina. (agent)

She will not be invited by Anup. (agent)

His book was stolen last week. (no agent)

Was the dog being chased? (no agent)

God is worshipped in every country. (no agent)

➔ **If there is the agent, make it a subject. If there is no agent, think of a subject that matches the context.**

Some trees are being planted by Mina. (agent)

*Mina*.....

She will not be invited by Anup. (agent)

*Anup*.....

His book was stolen last week. (no agent)

*Somebody*.....

Was the dog being chased? (no agent)

*Was anyone*.....

God is worshipped in every country. (no agent)

*People*.....

Generally the subjects like 'people, somebody, nobody, someone, we, they, you, etc' are chosen if there are no agent in the passive sentence.

➔ **Then think of a tense of the passive sentence and its active construction. Supply correct active forms of verbs.**

Some trees are being planted by Mina. (present continuous passive)

*Mina is planting*.....

She will not be invited by Anup. (simple future passive)

*Anup will not invite*.....

His book was stolen last week. (simple past passive)

*Somebody stole*.....

*Was anyone was chasing*.....

God is worshipped in every country. (simple present passive)

*People worship*.....

➔ **Keep the object after the main verb, and then the rest parts of the sentence.**

Some trees are being planted by Mina. *Mina is planting some trees.*

She will not be invited by Anup. *Anup will not invite her.*

His book was stolen last week. *Somebody stole his book last week.*

Was the dog being chased? *Was anyone chasing the dog?*

God is worshipped in every country. *People worship God in every country.*



## Test Yourself



### Fill in the blanks with correct passive forms of verbs:

1. Someone is looking after my dog today.  
My dog ..... today.
2. They are going to teach gymnastics at this school.  
Gymnastics ..... at this school.
3. They showed us the way to the national museum.  
We ..... the way to the national museum.
4. They cannot hold the meeting in that room.  
The meeting ..... in that room.
5. They told me to be careful.  
I ..... to be careful.
6. They have just built a new house in this village.  
A new house ..... in this village.
7. The police held back the protesters.  
The protesters ..... by the police.
8. Somebody must finish the work as soon as possible.  
The work ..... as soon as possible.
9. They left the stolen car in the ditch.  
The stolen car ..... in the ditch.
10. He should have helped his brother prepare for the test.  
His brother ..... prepare for the test.
11. We invite them to stay here once a year.  
They ..... to stay here once a year.
12. She must have left the keys behind.  
The keys ..... behind by her.
13. Somebody has burned a hole in this carpet.  
A hole ..... in this carpet.
14. Our teacher split the class into groups of five.  
The class ..... into groups of five by our teacher.
15. A big lorry ran over her dog yesterday.  
Her dog ..... by a big lorry.
16. Somebody stick the paper on the window.  
The paper ..... on the window.
17. The ice blocked off the road.  
The road ..... by the ice.
18. They have given us useful instructions.  
We ..... useful instructions.
19. She showed her friends her new house.  
Her friends ..... her new house by her.
20. The teacher asked the student a very difficult question at the oral exam.  
The student ..... a very difficult question at the oral exam.
21. We must look into the question.  
The question .....
22. They told him to shut up.  
He ..... to shut up.
23. If you behave like that, nobody will invite you to a party.  
If you behave like that, you ..... to a party.

**Test Yourself** 

Change the following sentences into passive voice:

1. Aryan sets his alarm clock for 5:30 am.
2. Jiya spread the newspaper out on the floor.
3. Some workmen were cleaning the entry to the cave.
4. They are going to build a temple in the village.
5. People believe that he is a very good pianist.
6. A professional photographer has taken these pictures.
7. The police are looking for the missing paintings.
8. Somebody will deliver the package before 9 o'clock.
9. You should not wash this dress by hand.
10. Where did she put the vase?
11. Someone broke into her house last night.
12. I will introduce you to my friend this week.
13. He invited me to the party.
14. Nobody noticed his mistake.
15. They say that he knows some very influential people.
16. Please accept our sincere apologies.
17. When will you give us a party?
18. Susan has washed these clothes.
19. They are building a bridge here.
20. Somebody stole my pen yesterday.
21. The condition of these students worried the Principal.
22. Kindly don't be angry with me.

**Test Yourself** 

Change the following sentences into passive voice:

1. The NEA has reduced the power cut length to four hours a day.
2. Rosy gave Pukar a nice present.
3. She will have finished her work by nine o'clock.
4. Did anyone answer your question?
5. They have already removed two cars from the street.
6. People generally assume that the USA is the richest country in the world.
7. Anita may invite them to her next birthday party.
8. Priyanka slipped a postcard under the door.
9. They called in the troops to repair the major embankment.
10. People say that the president will arrive on Monday.
11. People felt that the social workers were doing valuable work.
12. A policeman can help him.
13. The police reported that the number of car accidents had increased.
14. They told the children to leave the room.
15. His decision disappointed them.
16. The doctors claim that this new technique is a revolution for heart problems.
17. They smiled at the girl as she walked by.
18. Why didn't they offer him the job?



Change the following sentences into active voice:

1. The accident was reported by a witness.
2. The book will be read by the students.
3. A piece of plastic has been swallowed by the child.
4. Our dog is frightened by loud thunderstorms.
5. The ball is hit straight into the bleachers by the batter.
6. A good film will be shown in the cinema tomorrow.
7. The frogs were being chased by the cats.
8. When will they be taught English?
9. The dishes have not been washed by my sister.
10. His hair was cut by his brother.
11. He is thought to be a spy.
12. You are requested to sing a song.
13. Milan has been invited to the party by Nehal.
14. I was sent a letter the day before yesterday by Nina.
15. His house was damaged by a falling tree.
16. I was given the book by my friend last Sunday.
17. The issue was discussed by the members of the House of Representatives.
18. The national anthem is being sung by the students now.
19. Library books are often borrowed by students.
20. Were the books bought by Sunita?
21. The notice was stuck on the window by Atul.
22. The class has been split up into groups of three by the teacher.
23. I was being woken up by the alarm clock at 5 o'clock.
24. His English can easily be understood by us.
25. Let this park be cleaned.
26. A new library will be opened in our village next week.
27. Leave that car outside. It will not be stolen because it's too old.
28. Too much money is being spent on the army.
29. I'm being taught French by Mr. Albert.
30. Is he being taught English by Miss Rai?
31. Can the puzzle be solved by Ryan?
32. Many beautiful songs are being sung at this competition by the students.
33. The building was painted bright blue by Anup and his friends.
34. Let the radio be turned off.
35. *Romeo and Juliet* was written by Shakespeare.
36. The city was destroyed by an earthquake in 1906.
37. Mr. Khunal is known to me.
38. By whom was this letter written?
39. More traffic accidents are caused by drunk drivers than anything else.
40. The light bulb was invented by Edison.
41. He will be looked after by his sister.
42. He was thought to be mad.
43. The city is being visited by hundreds of tourists every year.
44. These books had been left in the classroom by a careless student.
45. Imran will be pleased with the news.
46. The house had been broken into while the owners were on vacation.



Rewrite the following sentences choosing the best alternatives from the brackets:

1. Raju called me a liar. Its passive form is: .....by Raju. (I was called a liar, A liar was called to me, A liar was called)
2. Tourists are attracted by the architecture of this temple. That is to say: The architecture of this temple .....tourists. (attracts, attracted, attracting)
3. Everything has to be learnt. It means: we .....everything. (have learnt, have been learnt, have to learn)
4. This joke would not be funny if it .....into French. (translate, translated, was translated)
5. Everybody .....by the terrible news yesterday. (shocked, was shocked, was shocking)
6. Our essays .....by the team of English experts. (are being evaluated, is evaluated, has evaluated)
7. He .....responsible for the accident. (was holding, was held, is being held).
8. A prize .....to whoever solves this puzzle. (is giving, will be giving, will be given)
9. Last Friday our house .....into. (had broken, was broken, broke)
10. The words .....by the teacher today. (are explained, explained, will explain)
11. We .....postcards by our friends the day before yesterday. (were sent, sent, will be sent)
12. This car ..... It's too old. (will not be stolen, will steal, stole)
13. Nobody saw me. I ..... (am not seen, haven't been seen, wasn't seen)
14. This street .....because of snow. (has already been closed, has already closed, closed)
15. A new restaurant .....next week. (will be opened, will open, has opened)
16. I love people .....me. (admiring, are admiring, being admired)
17. His friend .....to the party yesterday. (was invited, invited, will be invited)
18. I .....the book by my friend last Sunday. (was given, was not given, gave)
19. The dishes .....by my sister. (have not been washed, have not washed, has not been washed)
20. I .....a small party to my friend last week. (had given, was not given, gave)
21. People are destroying the jungle. The jungle .....(is destroying, is destroyed, is being destroyed)
22. They gave me some sweets. I .....some sweets. (am given, was given, was giving)
23. Let's make a fun. Let ..... (a fun made, a fun be made, a fun was made)
24. We must obey our elders. Our elders must .....(obey, be obeyed, will be obeyed)
25. He .....for cheating the villagers. (were jailed, should be jailed, jailed)
26. Who wrote this letter? .....was this letter written? (Who, By whom, Whom by)
27. The passive form of the sentence 'Nobody met me.' is: I .....(was not met, didn't meet, was met nobody)
28. Watches are being .....(mend, mending, mended)
29. No one can do it. It .....(hasn't been done, can't be done, could not be done)
30. I was not informed about the meeting. That means: No one .....me about the meeting. (was informed, informed, was being informed)
31. The boss promised us higher wages. We .....higher wages. (have been promised, are promised, were promised)
32. I am teaching my daughters. My daughters are ..... (being taught, taught, teaching)
33. I don't like people .....at the poor. (being laughed, laughed, laughing)
34. What .....by Shelly? (did you buy, was bought, is buying)
35. All the books .....by the students. (bought, has been bought, have been bought)



Choose the correct answers from the brackets:

1. Many customers in the restaurant found the coffee too bitter to drink, but they still ..... it frequently. (ordered, was ordered, will order)
2. He tried to act cool when he slipped in the puddle, but the other students ..... at him. (were laughed, laughed, are laughed)
3. Nobody ..... that this was the greatest marine disaster of all time. (can deny, can be denied)
4. A lot of new flats ..... at the moment to house the people moving to the city. (are building, have built, are being built)
5. Aspirin ..... by people with a history of stomach disorders. (should not take, should not be taken, should have taken)
6. It ..... the court case will be dismissed tomorrow when new evidence is put before the judge. (is believed that, is believed to, was believed to be)
7. The Titanic ..... an iceberg and sank on the night of April 14<sup>th</sup>, 1912. (was struck, struck, had struck)
8. The new president ..... by many congressmen. (is supporting, is supported, has supported)
9. Himesh ..... a great singer. (is believed to be, has believed to be, is believing to be)
10. My friend ..... from his job for sloppy work. (was fired, has fired, is firing)
11. Has anything ..... in the cave? (found, was found, been found)
12. Is the food ..... for dinner? (heat, being heated, heats)
13. Which bank ..... recently? (has robbed, is robbing, has been robbed)
14. Where was the statue .....? (found, finding, finds)
15. How ..... your car stolen? (has, was, were)
16. How much money ..... on renovating the house? (is spending, have spent, was spent)
17. What's this jacket .....? (make of, made, made of)
18. The injured boy ..... to the nearest hospital. (was carried, was carrying, carried)
19. This song ..... by A. R. Rehman. (has composed, was composing, was composed)
20. The passive form of the sentence 'Mr. Shrestha drove us to the airport.' is: ..... to the airport by Mr. Shrestha. (We were driven, We have driven, Mr. Shrestha was driven)
21. His confidence ..... by this report. (will be built up, will be built up, will be build up)
22. One of the other prisoners ..... (was beat up, was beaten up, were beaten up)
23. These children ..... in a friendly atmosphere. (are bringing up, are been brought up, are being brought up)
24. The street outside my house ..... (is been dug up, is being dig up, is being dug up)
25. The passive voice of 'A child can do no harm.' is: No harm can be ..... by a child. (done, do, doing)
26. We postponed the match. That means the match ..... (was postponed, postponed, were postponed)

# Relative Clause

## Read the letter.

Birgunj  
May 10<sup>th</sup>

Dear Anurag,

In your last letter, you asked me to tell you about all the things I did during my Dashain vacation.

We went to Kathmandu, **where** I have some friends. These are my old friends, **whom** I hadn't seen for about three years. My friend Reshma, **whose** sister is a nurse, came with me and we had a great time. We flew to Kathmandu on Monday 24<sup>th</sup>, **when** was also my birthday.

The first thing we did was to visit the central zoo **where** we saw a lot of animals. The following day, which was cloudy and rainy unfortunately, we went to a museum **where** they have a lot of historical things. The horrible weather never improved all day so we visited a Newari restaurant later in the afternoon and had an early dinner. The waiters, **who** were all dressed in traditional Newari dresses, were very friendly and told us about the history of the restaurant **whose** name was Soma Kitchen. The restaurant, **which** has been opened since 1998, was visited by most of the famous politicians and industrialists.

The skies were blue on Thursday and we spent some time out travelling in a taxi **which** we hired. I took a lot of photographs with my digital camera **which** I bought last year. We enjoyed a lot.

The next time **when** you write to me, you must tell me about next holiday plan.

With regards,  
Binesh

- WH-words like '**where, when, who, which, etc**' are called relative clauses. We use relative clauses to give additional information about something without starting another sentence.
- By combining sentences with a relative clause, the text becomes more fluent and we can avoid repeating certain words.
- There are two types of relative clauses- **defining** (identifying) and **non-defining**.  
That is the boy **who is going to take part in the quiz contest**.

It is a defining relative clause. It identifies 'the boy'.  
It tells us about whom the speaker is talking about.

Yesterday I met singer Suniti, **who is planning to cast her new album**.

It is a non-defining relative clause. Here the person is already identified. So the relative clause simply gives extra information about her.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Defining and Non-defining Relative Clauses

- A defining relative clause identifies the noun, whereas a non-defining relative clause gives extra information to it.

He is the boy **who** topped the class. (It identifies the noun 'the boy'.)

Raman, **who** works in a bank, has decided to leave his job.

Here the person is already identified. So the relative clause simply gives extra information about Raman.

- We put a comma (,) before a non-defining relative clause. If it comes in the middle of the sentence, we put a comma after it as well. We don't put a comma with a defining relative clause.

We met a friendly tourist **who** came from Australia. (no comma)

Yesterday I met Anjali, **who** told me about her father's business. (comma)

Mr. Koirala, **who** died in 1985, was a great singer. (two commas)

- In defining relative clauses, we can leave out 'who', 'which' and 'that' when they are objects. But in a non-defining clause, we can't leave out 'who' or 'which'.

The book **which** my sister bought last week is very useful for me.

(It is the object of the defining clause and you can leave it out.)

The book my sister bought last week is very useful for me.

The book, **which** is on the table, is very useful for me.

(It is the subject of the defining clause and we cannot leave it out.)

The suitcase **which** we purchased last week is very strong.

The sack, **which** was full of rocks, was too heavy to lift.

- We do not use 'that' in non-defining relative clauses. We can use 'whose' and 'where' in non-defining clauses.

I invited Ragini, **whose** brother is a good friend of mine.

I went back to the Everest Hotel, **where** I found my friends waiting for me.

- Defining relative clauses are often used after 'someone, anyone, everything, some, many, several, all, those, etc'.

We met everyone **who** passed the final exam.

Is there anyone **who** can speak French?

Those **who** passed the test will be taught by Mr. Sahani.

- 'When' and 'where' are mostly used in non-defining clauses.

I will meet you at 2 o'clock, **when** you have a break at your school.

My best holiday was in 1998, **when** I met Riya in Dubai.

He came from Delhi, **where** I visited two years ago.

- 'When' and 'where' can also be used in non-defining clauses if 'when' is preceded by the words like 'time, day, month, year, occasion, etc.' and 'where' is preceded by the words like 'place, room, street, town, village, etc.'.

This is the year **when** they should start working.

The place **where** they work is very nice.

The room **where** I did my homework is quiet and spacious.

I returned to the village **where** I had spent my childhood.

- 'Why' is used in a defining clauses after the word 'reason'.

This is the reason **why** these boys are weak.

This is reason **why** she doesn't want to work in that factory.



**Grammar Practice:** Write the numbers of the sentences under the proper headings.

1. Bimala, whose daughter is ill, cannot come to the school.
2. Football players who need not follow these rules are very experienced.
3. Imran is the man who looks like the Prime Minister.
4. Anil was looking at the girl, who was running along the road.
5. I stopped at Dhulikhel, where my brother owns a shop.
6. Listen to the person whom you trust.
7. Mr. Khurana, who lives next door, always watches television.
8. My friend, who is forty years old, loves bungee jumping.
9. Sabnam met the old man who lives next door.
10. That's my friend Kunal, who looks like the Prime Minister.
11. The book that I bought yesterday isn't very good.
12. The boy who studies in Grade X is a good football player.
13. The company, which was established in 1904, has about two hundred branch offices.
14. The couple who live next door always watch television.
15. The girls who live downstairs are Chinese.

<i>Defining relative clauses</i>	<i>Non-defining relative clauses</i>
1,	2,



**GRAMMAR STUDY: Uses of Relative Clauses**

➤ *Relative clauses are used immediately after the nouns being referred to. Here is the list of relative clauses with their uses and examples:*

<b>who</b>	<i>refer to people (the subject of the verb)</i>	I told you about the woman who lives next door. Yesterday she met Anil, who bought this house last week. Did you see anyone who has got long beard?
<b>whose</b>	<i>refer to possession for people, animals and things</i>	Do you know the boy whose mother is a nurse? Anita, whose brother is a singer, has gone to the USA. The dogs whose puppies are in the kennel are well trained.
<b>whom</b>	<i>refer to people (the object of the verb)</i>	I was invited by the girl whom I met at the airport. The man whom you saw is an inspector. The girl whom you talked to is a dancer.
<b>that</b>	<i>animals and things ('which' is also possible. 'That' sometimes refers to people also.)</i>	The cat that ate that packet of biscuits is very clever. I don't like the table that/which stands in the kitchen. All the students that passed the test are preparing for the final exam. (All the students who.....)
	<i>after 'all, everything, something, anything, nothing, etc.'</i>	There is still something that needs to be discussed. You can take everything that you want. Is there anything that I can do for you?
<b>which</b>	<i>subject or object pronoun for animals and things</i>	Do you see the cat which is lying on the roof? The book, which was published last month, was about women empowerment.
<b>when</b>	<i>time</i>	My best holiday was in 1997, when I met Anu in Darjeeling. He arrived on the day when the school was closed.
<b>why</b>	<i>reason</i>	Can you tell me the reason why she began to weep? The reason why I have come here is to meet your brother.
<b>where</b>	<i>place</i>	This is the village where the criminal was arrested. This is the hotel where we can eat Chinese food.



## Test Yourself

1

Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct relative clauses from the brackets:

1. People ..... live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones. (who, whose, whom)
2. Bibha prefers to watch movies ..... do not make her cry. (that, what, when)
3. The police questioned everyone ..... lived in the colony. (which, who, whose)
4. My brother Tom, ..... hates fishing, will stay at home. (who, whose, whom)
5. A man ..... name I have forgotten came to see you yesterday. (who, whose, whom)
6. I put everything in my suitcase, ..... is under my bed. (which, who, what)
7. This is the lady ..... wants to talk to the Principal. (who, whose, whom)
8. Yesterday I saw a dress, ..... was really expensive. (what, where, which)
9. Miss Mona is the secretary ..... has just arrived from Japan. (who, whose, whom)
10. He bought all the books ..... are required for the course. (when, where, that)
11. Eat the bread ..... is on the big basket. (when, where, that)
12. Don't believe people ..... say lies. (when, who, what)
13. An atlas is a book ..... is full of different maps. (what, where, that)
14. The teacher, ..... every student is afraid of, is really very nice. (who, whose, whom)
15. The bridge ..... collapsed during the flood has been repaired. (what, where, that)
16. Is there another time ..... I can call you? (what, which, when)
17. In the park I saw Atul, ..... was reading a paper as usual. (who, whose, whom)
18. A compass is a device ..... shows direction. (what, when, that)
19. We can meet at the Everest Hotel, ..... is on the main road. (what, which, that)
20. The present ..... he bought me is beautiful. (what, which, when)
21. Anu, ..... I've never met, is coming from America next week. (that, whose, whom)
22. My students, ..... are all adults, are learning English to get a better job.  
(where, who, whose)
23. The textbooks, ..... the students like, have lots of helpful examples. (what, where, which)
24. Mr. Shrestha, ..... enjoys going to the theatre, has been invited to join our club. (who, whose, whom)
25. The piggy bank in ..... the little girl keeps her money has been stolen. (what, which, that)



## Test Yourself

2

Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct relative clauses from the brackets:

1. Do you like the school ..... Anita studies? (what, which, where)
2. The hotel ..... we stayed was near the lake. (whose, which, where)
3. The dress ..... Raman is wearing is very expensive. (what, that, who)
4. The doctor ..... works in Bir Hospital is standing there. (whose, that, where)
5. The building ..... I live was built in 2001. (whose, what, where)
6. Can you tell me ..... I can buy wrapping paper? (that, what, where)
7. That is the building ..... they shot the film 'WANTED'. (whose, where, which)
8. Anita, ..... is Bhola's sister, met the manager last week. (who, whose, whom)
9. The hotel ..... we stayed was very good for the price. (when, which, where)
10. The people ..... I was sitting with were very noisy. (who, whose, when)
11. Her parents, ..... are retired, come to Kathmandu every year. (who, whose, whom)
12. This is a film, ..... will be very popular with teenagers. (when, which, where)
13. Penguins are birds ..... cannot fly. (when, that, where)
14. My sister, ..... visited me last week, is very good at singing. (who, whose, whom)
15. This is the school ..... I used to study. (where, what, when)

16. I didn't know.....he was going to do next. (what, that, where)
17. Her grandfather died in 1984, by.....time he had written more than ten books. (that, which, where)
18. I will stay in the hotel.....we stayed last year. (which, where, what)
19. Do you remember the boy.....was playing the guitar at the concert? (who, whose, whom)
20. Our friends, .....we met at university, are coming to visit next week. (that, whose, whom)
21. My parents, .....were born in a village, moved to Kathmandu last year. (who, whose, whom)
22. The city, .....football team lost the final, never wins anything. (who, whose, whom)
23. Riya wanted to show me her new dress.....she had bought in Delhi. (when, which, where)
24. The pupils, .....sang in the concert gave a wonderful performance. (who, whose, whom)
25. Valencia, .....is Spain's third largest city, is on the Mediterranean coast. (when, which, where)



### Test Yourself



Rewrite the following sentences choosing correct relative clauses from the brackets:

1. Go and see the dentist, .....will polish your teeth. (who, whose, whom)
2. The student.....lost his bag is waiting in the office. (who, whose, whom)
3. The house.....they live needs repairing. (where, what, when)
4. Go and find the guests.....arrived here yesterday. (who, whose, whom)
5. This is the town.....I was born. (where, what, when)
6. Look at the horses.....are drinking in the river. (where, what, which)
7. I ate all the cake.....you gave me. (that, when, whose)
8. Children.....eat a lot of candy often get bad teeth. (who, whose, whom)
9. Give me a book.....I gave you last week. (where, when, that)
10. I met Anita, .....was wearing a black hat. (which, who, when)
11. Did you meet the boy.....painted that picture? (who, whose, whom)
12. The man ..... left his bag here didn't come back. (who, whose, whom)
13. She likes to eat food.....is too delicious. (when, that, where)
14. I have a cousin.....is very good at knitting. (who, whose, whom)
15. That boy lived in a city.....we can see many ancient temples. (when, which, where)
16. Alan is going out with Tina, .....is her classmate. (who, whose, whom)
17. The bag.....the man is carrying is very heavy. (what, where, that)
18. This is the story.....I read last month. (that, what, whose)
19. The students.....we met were very intelligent. (that, whose, whom)
20. In 1998 I travelled to Paris, .....I met my husband. (who, whose, where)
21. Can I borrow the book.....was written by R. N. Joshi? (that, what, whose)
22. The students.....were selected for the final test are very intelligent. (that, whose, whom)
23. I will arrive there on Sunday.....nobody will be there. (when, what, where)
24. She's the actress.....he likes very much. (who, whose, whom)
25. The food.....she is buying looks healthy. (who, that, when)

**Rewrite the following sentences choosing the best alternatives from the brackets:**

1. The foreigner.....you saw at the party last night is David Kerr. (who, whose, whom)
2. They have finished building a new library, .....will open in August. (that, which, when)
3. This test is for students.....native language is not English. (who, whose, whom)
4. The singer.....we saw on television last night has won the award. (that, whose, whom)
5. People.....live on the mountain usually live for a long time. (who, whose, whom)
6. We invited the boy.....Tom had met yesterday to the party. (that, whose, whom)
7. A dishwasher is a machine.....washes dishes. (who, that, what)
8. That's the professor.....spent 10 years in South Africa. (who, whose, whom)
9. The bat is the only mammal.....can fly. (who, that, whom)
10. I felt bad for the boy.....failed the exam. (that, which, who)
11. Jasmine is a flower.....is white and very fragrant. (which, who, that)
12. They are filming the girl.....birthday is today. (whose, that, who)
13. A kangaroo is an animal.....lives in Australia. (when, where, that)
14. Karen, .....surname is Johnson, is a beautiful model. (who, whose, that)
15. Mandira, .....comes from Janakpur, has been admitted in our school. (who, whose, whom)
16. Radium is a metal.....shines in the dark. (who, whose, that)
17. There's the couple.....dancing you liked so much. (whose, whom, who)
18. That is the girl.....brother is a famous footballer. (who, whose, whom)
19. He lived in Kathmandu, .....he worked for a big company. (what, why, where)
20. Van Gogh was a painter.....paintings are admired worldwide. (who, whose, whom)
21. A camel is an animal.....lives in the desert. (what, where, that)
22. Please take me to the hotel.....has the best service in town. (when, where, which)
23. Shakespeare was a British writer.....wrote Romeo and Juliet. (who, whose, whom)
24. I think everybody.....took part in the competition learnt a lot. (who, whose, whom)
25. What's the name of the river.....flows through the valley? (which, when, where)
26. The ointment.....the doctor prescribed cured the rash on my arms quite quickly.  
(which, when, whose)
27. Look for the place.....the wild animals drink and try to take a photo. (what, where, which)
28. I haven't seen Angela, .....brother is an engineer, for a long time now. (who, whose, whom)
29. The police have called in an expert to identify.....handwriting is actually on the ransom letter. (who, whose, whom)
30. The time.....I feel most stressed every day is 4 p.m. because we have to face many customers' complaints. (where, when, what)
31. He showed me all the different colourful stamps.....he had collected. (where, when, that)
32. What is the name of the restaurant.....we had Chinese food last month? (what, that, where)
33. The student.....design won the competition had never entered such an event before. (whom, who, whose)
34. Amrita, .....article was published in last week's issue of the school magazine, is in my brother's class. (who, whose, whom)
35. The student.....topped the class will be awarded a prize of one lakh. (who, whose, whom)
36. Atul said something about a house in Janakpur, .....he goes every summer. (where, when, which)
37. Albert Einstein, .....put forward the theory of relativity, is considered by many as the most intelligent person in human history. (who, whose, whom)

# Conjunctions

## Read the following text.

Unemployed Rogan Sharma has applied for more than 20 jobs **but** he's still out of work. He has been searching for a good job for himself for three months. **Although** he is intelligent and hardworking, he has not found any job yet. His brother **and** sister always read papers **so as to** help Rogan. They let him know **if** any vacancies come up. **Either** his brother **or** his sister is always there to help him apply for a post.



Last week he posted an application in an English medium school for the post of an English teacher. He thought he would get the job this time **because** he was very impressive in the interview. **Both** his brother **and** sister were also very hopeful. He was absolutely desperate **when** he didn't get a call from the Principal even **after** two weeks. **In spite of** his hard labour, he didn't get that job.

He has now decided to prepare himself. He is going to join a language centre **so that** he can improve his spoken English. He has started reading English newspapers **as well as** listening to news on BBC. He will apply for a job **as soon as** he feels quite confident.

**As** a lot of candidates apply for a single post, the level of competition is very high. **Unless** you're well prepared for any post, there is little chance of getting it.

Here '**but, although, and, either ... or, because, when, after, etc'** are conjunctions. They join words, phrases and sentences.

⇒ Look at the following sentences once again.

Unemployed Rogan Sharma has applied for more than 20 jobs **but** he's still out of work.

It expresses a conflicting idea.  
It joins two sentences.

It expresses a reason.  
It joins two sentences.

He would get the job this time **because** he was very impressive in the interview.

It expresses a concession.  
It joins two sentences.

**In spite of** his hard labour, he didn't get that job.

It is a correlative conjunction.  
It joins two similar elements.

**Either** his brother **or** his sister is always there to help him apply for a post.



## GRAMMAR STUDY: Kinds and Uses

There are three kinds of conjunctions- **coordinating**, **subordinating** and **correlative**.

➤ *Coordinating conjunctions are used to join two words, two phrases or two clauses.*

<b>and</b>	join two words or ideas	He bought a jug, a basket <b>and</b> a hammer. Ali and Anu met the Principal <b>and</b> the Director. He writes slowly <b>and</b> neatly. He wrote a letter <b>and</b> posted it.
<b>but</b>	show opposite or conflicting ideas	She likes oranges <b>but</b> her sister doesn't. He was poor <b>but</b> happy. She is small <b>but</b> strong. He wrote a letter, <b>but</b> didn't post it.
<b>or</b>	show choice or possibilities	Have you fried <b>or</b> steamed it? Do you like tea <b>or</b> coffee? He will be here on Monday <b>or</b> Tuesday. Is she laughing <b>or</b> crying?
<b>so</b>	show result	The bus was crowded <b>so</b> we had to stand. Sony was sick, <b>so</b> she went to hospital.
<b>yet</b>	however	The sun is warm, <b>yet</b> the air is cool. He lost the match, <b>yet</b> he is very happy.
<b>nor</b>	and neither	I did not see it, <b>nor</b> did they. She cannot play chess, <b>nor</b> can her sister.

➤ *Correlative conjunctions are always used in pairs. They join similar elements.*

<b>both...and</b>	two	She is <b>both</b> intelligent <b>and</b> good looking. <b>Both</b> my sister <b>and</b> my brother play the piano. They play <b>both</b> basketball <b>and</b> volleyball.
<b>either...or</b>	one or the other of two	<b>Either</b> Mona <b>or</b> her sister will dance. He bought <b>either</b> a pen <b>or</b> a pencil. We will <b>either</b> go for a swim <b>or</b> visit a park.
<b>neither...nor</b>	not one nor the other of two things or people:	<b>Neither</b> Anita <b>nor</b> Sunita was in the park. She <b>neither</b> danced <b>nor</b> sang in the party. I will meet them <b>neither</b> here <b>nor</b> there.
<b>not only...but also</b>	show that something else is also true	He was <b>not only</b> scolded <b>but also</b> punished. She is <b>not only</b> clever <b>but also</b> hard working. He <b>not only</b> bought a doll <b>but also</b> a toy.

➤ *Subordinating conjunctions allow us to show which idea is more and which is less important. They supply a time, reason, condition, and so on for the main clause.*

<b>Reason and purpose</b>	<p><b>As</b> it is raining, I will not go out. She was absent <b>because</b> she was sick. The match was postponed <b>because of</b> the rain. <b>Since</b> you are not well, you should take a rest. Nina learnt computer <b>so that</b> she could get a good job. He saved a lot of money <b>in order that</b> he could buy a house. He went to market <b>in order to</b> buy some vegetables. He saved a lot of money <b>so as to</b> buy a house. We wondered <b>why</b> Anu was absent.</p>
<b>Concession</b>	<p><b>Although</b> he was poor, he was happy. <b>Though</b> he was poor, he was happy. <b>Even though</b> he was poor, he was happy. He was happy <b>in spite of</b> his poverty. <b>Despite</b> his poverty, he was happy.</p>

Time	<p>I will call you <b>after</b> I come to Kathmandu.          Meet me <b>before</b> you leave.          You have not changed a lot <b>since</b> we last met.          I always switch off the light <b>when</b> I go to bed.          Return this book <b>when</b> you next meet me.  <b>Whenever</b> she comes here, she calls me.          I broke my leg <b>while</b> playing football.          We went on playing <b>until</b> Mother shouted angrily at us.          We stayed outside talking <b>till</b> the sun went down.          Cross the road <b>as soon as</b> the light turns green.          We were all in tears <b>as</b> the film came to an end.</p>
Place	<p>You'd better join the queue <b>where</b> they are standing.  <b>Where</b> there is a will, there is a way.          Go to the place <b>where</b> you are supposed to be.  <b>Wherever</b> he led, we followed.  <b>Everywhere</b> we travelled, the same guide was with us.</p>
Condition	<p><b>If</b> he is here, I will see him.  <b>Unless</b> you invite them, they won't come.          You'd better take the keys <b>in case</b> I'm out.          They would pass the test <b>provided that</b> they took some tuition classes.          I'll get there, <b>even if</b> I have to walk.</p>
Manner	<p>They did <b>as</b> they were instructed.          He talks <b>as if</b> he knew everything.          It looks <b>as though</b> there will be a storm.          Do you know <b>how</b> she did it?          You can do it <b>however</b> you like.          You look <b>like</b> you haven't eaten anything for two days.          I want to speak English <b>the way</b> Sony speaks.</p>

**Note:** 'Because of' and 'in spite of' come with noun phrases. 'In order to', and 'so as to' come with to-infinitives. Other subordinating conjunctions often come with complete sentences.

### ➤ Some connecting adverbs

also: in addition	She is my neighbour; she is also my best friend.
besides: in addition	I like the job. Besides, I need the money.
consequently: so	She had a fever; consequently, she stayed at home.
however: but	We wanted to arrive on time; however, we were delayed by traffic.
moreover: in addition	She is very intelligent; moreover, she is very ambitious.
nevertheless: but	They are proud. Nevertheless, I like them.
nonetheless: but	The ascent was dangerous. Nonetheless, he decided to attempt it.
otherwise: if not, or else	We should consult them; otherwise, they may be upset.
then: next, afterwards, so	We went shopping, then we had lunch. If you are sure, then I must believe you.
therefore: for that reason	I was nervous; therefore, I could not do my best.
thus: so, in this way	He travelled as quickly as possible. Thus, he reached Boston the next day.



Rewrite the following sentences choosing the best alternatives from the brackets:

1. Ali could.....read but also write before he was four. (either, both, not only)
2. Reema failed the exam.....her stupidity. (because, because of, in spite of)
3. ....I told the truth, you would not believe me. (Even if, So that, Since)
4. I shall wait here.....you finish your work. (until, if, when)
5. Asha got up late.....she came to school on time. (yet, because, although)
6. You'd better take a taxi. ...., you'll arrive late. (Otherwise, However, Therefore)
7. ....Anil is rich, he walks in bare feet. (Although, So, Unless)
8. The kids didn't study. ...., they failed the exam. (Although, However, Therefore)
9. I didn't sleep well last night, .....I felt very tired today. (so, as, so that)
10. ....the bell rang, the students came out at once. (If, As soon as, Before)
11. Neha worked hard.....she could win the race. (to, because, so that)
12. Switch off all the lights.....you leave the house. (when, after, before)
13. The boss wanted to know the reason.....his secretary was late. (because, why, as)
14. ....it is cold, he goes for swimming. (Although, Because, Yet, But)
15. I won't invite my classmates to a party.....I know them well. (if, until, so)
16. Sunita climbs the stairs fast.....her leg is broken. (though, however, since)
17. Gunjan could find that book neither at the library, .....at the bookstore. (or, nor, so)
18. We keep food in the fridge.....it will not go bad. (because, so that, as)
19. Tina is shorter than me.....taller than Pushpa. (and, but, because)
20. I will join you, .....that the weather is fine. (provided, than, if)
21. I went to see the play.....it had good reviews. (because, because of, when)
22. He could.....read and write before he was four. (either, both, neither)
23. They cancelled the match.....a lot of players were ill. (because, because of, although)
24. Make sure you close all the windows.....it starts to rain. (after, before, until)
25. We waited.....the bus came. (if, till, for)
26. They were surprised.....pleased. (as well as, both and, nor)
27. We stayed up late, .....we were tired. (although, despite, in spite of)
28. ....you read this book, you would be sure to enjoy it. (If, Until, Unless)
29. Niraj got the job, .....he had no experience. (even though, because, since)
30. The beds were wide, soft.....comfortable. (and, but, or)
31. Move off.....the light turns green. (before, as soon as, until)
32. Atul could not come here on time.....the rain.(because, because of, so that)
33. Slow.....steady wins the race. (and, but, or)
34. Jasmine had to wait.....her husband became ready. (till, unless, as)
35. I didn't buy the dress.....it cost too much. (because, although, so that)
36. She's going to marry.....she finds the right man. (before, as soon as, unless)
37. I left home early.....I had to do several errands. (because, because of, although)
38. ....I'll have written a letter, it will be quarter to nine. (Since, By the time, Before)
39. We looked everywhere. ...., we could not find the keys. (However, Thus, Therefore)
40. Anita didn't eat anything, .....she was very hungry. (because of, in spite of, although)
41. He's.....an angry man.....nobody likes to be with him. (such...that, such...as, so...that)
42. The little child stood on the chair.....see out of the window. (because, so that, in order to)



## Test Yourself

2

### Fill in the blanks with correct conjunctions:

1. Did you go out ..... stay at home last night? (nor, or, but)
2. .... my warning, they went ahead with their plan. (Although, Despite, Even though)
3. I play a kind of music ..... nobody likes it. (and, but, both)
4. The sun is warm this afternoon, ..... the air is still quite cool. (or, nor, but)
5. The weather was terrible ....., we decided to delay our trip. (Although, However, Therefore)
6. I went to see the play, ..... it had good reviews. (because, because of, however)
7. .... Suman was not thirsty, he drank ten glasses of water. (Although, As, In spite of)
8. We will not go skiing ..... the weather is good. (as if, unless, because)
9. Anurag went crazy ..... his wife burnt his breakfast. (though, when, before)
10. I went for a walk ..... the sun was shining. (because, otherwise, so)
11. .... the bad weather, I didn't go for swimming. (Because, Though, Because of)
12. Meet me ..... her friend broke her leg in an accident. (because, because of, when)
13. .... I was in trouble, I helped my friends. (Because, Because of, Although)
14. .... you do not keep quiet, you can't hear what I'm saying. (If, Until, Unless)
15. I can't stop to chat ..... I'm already late. (because, although, so that)
16. I didn't go for swimming ..... the weather was bad. (because, though, because of)
17. I would like to come, ..... I do not have time. (but, nor, so)
18. .... today is Tuesday, Thursday is the day after tomorrow. (If, Until, Unless)
19. .... his weight, he was quite an active person. (In spite of, Though, Because of)
20. Gita went to school ..... her illness. (though, because of, in spite of)



## Test Yourself

3

### Fill in the blanks with correct conjunctions:

1. .... you follow the instructions, you should have no difficulty. (If, Until, Unless)
2. Do you know his address ..... telephone number? (but, or, nor)
3. .... hard he tries, he can't get success. (Therefore, However, Although)
4. She earns a lot ..... she borrows money from others. (and, yet, so)
5. .... the train was late, we arrived on time. (Although, As, In spite of)
6. Pukar didn't earn enough money ....., his wife decided to get a job. (However, Therefore, Nor)
7. They are happy ..... they have won the match. (because, because of, in spite of)
8. I must leave now ..... I have a great deal of work to do. (as, than, so)
9. I opened the door ..... looked out. (and, yet, not)
10. They lost the match ..... carelessness. (because, because of, in spite of)
11. .... loud you talk to him, he won't hear you, he's deaf. (However, Therefore, Although)
12. I couldn't buy the book ..... the shop didn't have a copy in stock. (because, although, so that)
13. They won the match ..... their best players were unable to play. (although, because, despite)
14. It will rain either today ..... tomorrow. (or, nor, and)
15. Whether he comes here ..... not, he will be given the share. (or, nor, and)
16. Sudan couldn't join the army ..... his illness. (because of, as, because)
17. I invited him ..... his friends. (and, but, nor)
18. .... I wrote a letter, I posted it. (As soon as, Because, Before)
19. Angela arrived home ..... her husband had finished cooking. (until, by the time, until)
20. I have both respect ..... admiration for them. (and, but, or)

## Grammar Type I (Reproduction)

### 1. Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.

- Their new house is very comfortable, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- Either Mohan or Sunil will call you this evening. (Change into negative.)
- The party lasted all night. (Change into 'how long' question)
- Yesterday evening at 11.30 we (dance) at the party. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- Taniya said to Bipin, "I'm sorry to come around without phoning you first." (Change into indirect speech.)
- Rosy gave Pukar a nice present. (Change into passive voice.)

### 2. Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.

- It's so lovely sitting here in the sun, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- Has he not written any letters? (Change into affirmative statement)
- I paid five hundred rupees for this shirt. (Change into 'how much' question)
- Pukar (read) 20 pages so far. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- The secretary said to the manager, "That remark was uncalled-for." (Change into indirect speech.)
- She will have finished her work by nine o'clock. (Change into passive voice.)

### 3. Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.

- Those handwritings aren't very clear, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- Has our flight been announced yet? (Change into affirmative statement)
- Mina is frying some onions in the kitchen. (Change into 'what' question)
- Sudha (work) here between 2003 and 2006. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- Miruzza said to me, "Why did you come to Kathmandu?" (Change into indirect speech.)
- Did anyone answer your question? (Change into passive voice.)

### 4. Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.

- He has not been proved guilty yet, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- He has not finished his work yet. (Change into affirmative)
- There are sixteen classrooms in my school. (Change into 'how many' question)
- Anna's father (buy) a car next year. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- "I received a letter from my friend," said Anita. (Change into indirect speech.)
- They have already removed two cars from the street. (Change into passive voice.)

### 5. Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.

- You think you're really intelligent, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- Do they want to join us? (Change into affirmative statement)
- They are coming to visit tomorrow. (Change into 'when' question)
- ..... she (like) tomato juice? No, she doesn't. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- He said, "Children must obey their teachers." (Change into indirect speech.)
- People generally assume that the USA is the richest country in the world. (Change into passive voice.)

6. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Say something to me in Chinese, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. She didn't do anything last week. (Change into affirmative)
- c. Mandira is learning computer because she wants a better job. (Change into 'why' question)
- d. Please don't make so much noise. I (study). (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. "I am working in a factory," his father said. (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. Anita may invite them to her next birthday party. (Change into passive voice.)

7. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Nobody helped them, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. Have they studied hard? (Change into affirmative statement)
- c. His father works as a cashier in a bank. (Change into 'where' question)
- d. I (climb) quite a lot of mountains. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. He said, "Let me read this book." (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. Priyanka slipped a postcard under the door. (Change into passive voice.)

8. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Seema put the camera in the drawer, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. Can his brother drive this car? (Change into negative)
- c. I don't get up early because I like to sleep late. (Change into 'why' question)
- d. In 2001, Kabir (visit) China with a group of friends. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. Angela said to me, "May God bless you with long life and prosperity!" (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. They called in the troops to repair the major embankment. (Change into passive voice.)

9. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Let's go for a walk, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. Goma does some housework. (Change into negative)
- c. His uncle gets home at 6 o'clock every night. (Change into 'what time' question)
- d. In all his career, Himesh never (miss) one day of work. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. Imran said, "She was sick last week." (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. People say that the president will arrive on Monday. (Change into passive voice.)

10. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. You won't be late, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. They know my brother Rahul. (Change into negative)
- c. Anita has dance classes every Friday. (Change into 'how often' question)
- d. It (not rain) a lot in November. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. He said to me, "Tell me your name." (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. The accident was reported by a witness. (Change into active voice.)

11. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Let's go out now and eat afterwards, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. He mopped his forehead with a handkerchief. (Change into interrogative)

- c. They like to visit their grandmother on weekends. (Change into 'what' question)
- d. John is playing a game of tennis. He (play) for 2 hours. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. Sudha said, "I am writing a letter now." (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. The book will be read by the students. (Change into active voice.)

12. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Sign here, please, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. I care about what he says. (Change into negative)
- c. The park is only two kilometres far from my house. (Change into 'how far' question)
- d. Last year Nina's uncle (travel) all over Australia. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. "I've read the book you lent me," said Kiran to Pukar. (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. A piece of plastic has been swallowed by the child. (Change into active voice.)

13. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. He's still sleeping, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. The DVD player comes with a year's guarantee. (Change into negative)
- c. Her favourite kind of music is Jazz. (Change into 'what' question)
- d. Kumar (not give) me anything two days ago. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. They said, "It's getting late. We really have to go." (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. Our dog is frightened by loud thunderstorms. (Change into active voice.)

14. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Sit down a moment, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. Pukar will be playing football. (Change into yes/no question)
- c. I didn't bring my story book today because my brother is reading it. (Change into 'why' question)
- d. Mum can't come to the phone because she (have) a shower now. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. She said, "May all your dreams come true!" (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. The ball is hit straight into the bleachers by the batter. (Change into active voice.)

15. *Reproduce the following sentences as indicated in the brackets.*

- a. Somebody threw tomatoes at the minister, .....? (Add a question tag.)
- b. You will have to buy us some more. (Change into negative)
- c. They are eating Chinese food. (Change into 'what kind' question)
- d. Mary is still watching TV. She (watch) TV all day. (Change the form of the verb given in the bracket.)
- e. "May God look over you from the heavens!" said Angela. (Change into indirect speech.)
- f. A good film will be shown in the cinema tomorrow. (Change into active voice.)

## Grammar Type II (Contextual Passages)

1. Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.

Dolphins are marine mammals that are related to whales and porpoises. .... (A, An, The) marine animal is one that..... (live, lives, is living) in water. Dolphins..... (have found, are found, are being found) all over the world's oceans, big rivers and marshes. They are carnivores and feed..... (in, by, on) fish and squid. They have powerful eyesight and hearing, ..... (and, although, but) do not have a sense of smell.

Dolphins come in different sizes, .....? (aren't they, do they, don't they) Some are smaller than the average person whereas others are more than five times as long as the average person. Marine zoologists say that dolphins..... (communicate, communicated, had communicated) with each other using clicks and whistles. This is one of the reasons that..... (have, gets, makes) them look close to human beings. Whether big or small all..... (is, has been, are) powerful swimmers. If you chance to be at the shoreline, you..... (see, will see, will have seen) dolphins bobbing in and out of waves.

2. Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet: (Rewriting is not compulsory)

Do you know what .....? (does opera mean/opera means/will opera mean). It refers..... (by/to/from) a dramatic art form, originated in Europe, in..... (what/which/that) the emotional content is conveyed to the audience as much through music, both vocal and instrumental; as it..... (is/was/has) through the lyrics. By contrast, in musical theatre an actor's dramatic performance is primary, and the music plays a lesser role. .... (A/An/The) drama in opera ..... (is presented/are presented/have been presented) using the primary elements of the theatre. Some of which..... (have/is/are) scenery, costume and acting. However, the words of the opera, or libretto are sung rather than spoken, .....? (isn't it/aren't they/wouldn't they) The huge accompaniment of the singers sometimes makes the opera..... (sound/sounded/to sound) like a full symphonic orchestra. One feels the real flavour of the orchestra if one..... (watch/watches/ will watch) it in person.

3. Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.

Penguins are among the most popular..... (in/of/on) all birds. They only live in and around..... (no article/a/the) South Pole and the Antarctic. No wild penguins..... (are living/live/has lived) in the Antarctic. There..... (is/are/have) believed to be different kinds of penguins. The largest penguin ..... (is being called/has been called/is called) the Emperor Penguin and the smallest is the Little Blue Penguin

..... (Because/Although/In spite of) there are 17 different kinds of penguins in all, none of them can fly. What makes penguins..... (survive/survived/to survive) in the coldest and the windiest weather conditions? If they..... (did not have/had not/would not have) thick layers of fat, they would never survive in the bitter cold. It is said that they..... (have to/will have to/had to) watch out for predators like killer whales and seals even in their freezing cold habitats. No one knows nature's mystery, .....? (isn't it/do they/don't they)

4. Choose and copy the best answers:

One day two intimate friends were walking through a desert. .... (At, In, From) a point during the trip they started arguing and one of the friends hit the other in the face. .... (A, An, The) one that had been hit was hurt, but without a further word, wrote down in

the sand: "Today my best friend hit me in the face." They kept on walking ..... (after, when, until) they came across an oasis, where they decided to freshen up and bathe. But the one who ..... (had hit, had been hit, hit) before got caught in the mud and was about to drown, but the friend saved him. This event got him ..... (write, written, to write) down on a stone: "Today my best friend saved my life." The friend who had hit his best friend and then saved him asked why ..... (did he write, he has written, he had written) in the sand and then on stone. The other friend answered, "When someone hurts us, we ..... (had to, has to, have to) write it down in sand so that the wind can forgive us by blowing it away. But if someone ..... (does, did, had done) something nice for us, we can engrave it on stone, where no wind can ever blow it away, .....?" (can't it, don't it, can it) Doesn't this text ..... (give, gives, are given) us sweet lesson?

5. *Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.*

Woodpeckers are found all over the world except in ..... (the, a, no article) the North and South Poles, Australia and New Zealand. The studies have shown that there ..... (lives, live, have lived) over 200 different kinds of woodpeckers. The Imperial Woodpeckers and the Ivory-billed Woodpeckers; the largest of their kinds ..... (is, are, have) most likely to be extinct. They will soon be no longer found ..... (in, on, into) the earth. Woodpeckers have sharp bills and short stiff tails ..... (who, which, whose) help prop them up against tree trunks. Their long tongues help them catch insects deep within trees. We often ..... (hear, are, hearing, heard) them drumming loudly on trees. This ..... (makes, have, gets) us feel we are in a forest. They ..... (can become, become, would become) pets if they learn to drum on siding of a house. They can easily ..... (attract, will be attracted, be attracted) to backyards with sunflower seeds or suet. Suet is a kind of animal fat that is very tasty to woodpeckers and other birds, .....? (aren't they, isn't it, don't they)

6. *Choose the correct options from the brackets to complete the text below:*

Once there was ..... (the, an, a) honest man in a village. He was poor and dull. His name was Govinda. He took a loan from a 'Mahajan' and went in search ..... (at, in, of) a goat for Dashain. He found a red goat. He thought himself, "I should buy this, .....? (should I, shouldn't I, should have I)". He thought ..... (he, his, him) children would be very happy at Dashain.

He was returning home through a jungle. While he ..... (is walking, was walking, walked), he met a man ..... (whom, who, whose) was standing under a tree. The man tricked him saying he was carrying a dog. Govinda said, "....." (This is a goat, That was a goat, It was a goat). After 15 minutes he met another man. He also told him it was a dog not a goat. At that time Govinda did not say anything. But he stopped and looked at the goat carefully. He was sure it was a goat. Half an hour later he met another man. He also told him that he was carrying a dog. Now Govinda was very angry. He cursed the man. Now he was in confusion. In this way Govinda ..... by all. (fooled, was fooled, is fooled). He thought it was true. So he left the goat in the jungle and walked to his home. The men were thugs. They took the goat. They made Govinda ..... (to abandon, abandon, abandoned) the goat. If he were wise enough, the thugs ..... (can't cheat, wouldn't cheat, wouldn't have cheated) him.

7. *Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.*

Once there was ..... (a, an, the) old jackal ..... (in, on, at) a jungle. He was very bad. One day, he saw a goat grazing in the field. He quickly approached the goat and said to himself,

“It is a delicious meal, .....?” (is it, isn’t it, wasn’t it). The goat..... (were, was, be) afraid of the jackal but she controlled herself and decided to struggle for life. The jackal said to the goat, “I’ll eat you.” The goat said to him, “You ..... (can’t eat, couldn’t eat, didn’t eat) me because I can jump down from the cliff and run away. “The goat looked at the jackal in such a way than she was challenging him..... (because, so, although) the jackal told her that he could also jump down from the cliff. The jackal realized that he ..... (challenged, was challenged, challenges). He, to show the goat his strength, immediately..... (jumps, jumped, is jumping) down from the cliff and died. If the goat had not used the trick, the jackal..... (will kill, would kill, would have killed) him. This makes us..... (remember, to remember, remembered) the proverb ‘Wisdom is greater than strength.

8. *Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.*

When you are invited to a meal in Thailand, the words of invitation literally mean ‘come and eat rice’. Indeed nearly all Thai dishes are eaten with rice, which..... (grow, grows, grew) there very easily as..... (a, an, the) climate is warm and there is plenty of rain. Rohman, a Thai, said, “..... (The food is served, The food was served, The food had been served) in neatly cut-up pieces.” In the past, the Thais used to eat..... (by, from, with) their hands but most of them use knives and forks these days. Following their traditional way of eating, they..... (wash, washes, are washing) their right hand in a bowl of water and eat the food. After the meal, the hand..... (is carefully cleaned, was carefully cleaned, was carefully clean) The meal mostly consists of different spicy dishes. They have the meal..... (serve, served, to serve) in bowls which everyone shares..... (because, though, despite) each person doesn’t have own bowl of rice. Thailand has a coastline, .....? (hadn’t it, doesn’t it, isn’t it). If fish and shellfish..... (are, were, had been) not found in abundance, the meal won’t be complete.

9. *Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.*

Science has told us so much..... (on, about, to) the moon that it is fairly easy to imagine what it ..... (was, will be, had been) like to go there. It is certainly not a friendly place, ..... (isn’t it, is it, does it)? There can be no life of any kind on the moon..... (because, therefore, although) there is no air or water. For mile after mile, there..... (are, has, is) only the dust with mountains around. Above, the sun and stars shine in..... (a, an, the) sky. If you step out of the mountain shadow..... (you were, you will, you would) move from severe cold to great heat. The moon is also a very silent world for sound waves can only travel through air. But beyond the broken horizon, a friendly sight..... (is seen, be seen, to be seen). The astronauts say, “..... (The earth shines, The earth shone, The earth will shine) more brightly than the stars.” From the distance, our earth looks like an immense ball, clouded blue and green and brown. The sight of the heavenly bodies makes us..... (wonder, wondered, to wonder) about the universe.

10. *Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.*

One day..... (a, an, the) university student was driving home from college. As he was driving, a small girl appeared..... (on, in, at) the middle of the road. He tried to stop his car, .....? (didn’t he, doesn’t he, don’t he). His brakes..... (was not, be not, were not) working and thus the girl..... (was hit, hit, had been hit). The girl’s legs were broken and she was seriously injured. The boy, then, ..... (is taking, took, takes) her to hospital. As soon as they reached hospital, the hospital staff asked.....

(what is her name, what her name was, what her name is). She was taken to hospital in time..... (so, because, although) she was saved. If she had not been taken to hospital, she..... (would die, she will die, would have died). The boy was arrested and was made..... (to pay, paid, pay) for the girl's treatment.

**11. Choose the correct answers from the brackets to complete the following text and copy it in your answer sheet.**

As I was leaving my friend's office..... (at, on, in) noon, I had no idea where I..... (parked, had parked, park) my car. I went to police station and reported that I had lost..... (a, an, the) small red car somewhere. One of the policemen said that if he were me, he..... (will look, would look, would looked) for it himself. Walking down the street, I examined each car closely and was greatly relieved to see a small red car just behind a cart. I was disappointed to discover that..... (although, because, however) the car was exactly like mine, it..... (belongs, belong, belonged) to someone else. Turning the corner, I nearly jumped for joy; my car was right in front of me, .....? (was it, is it, wasn't it) Pasted on the windscreen was a litter ticket which informed me that the car..... (had visited, had been visited, was visited) by a policeman in my absence. This made me..... (feel, to feel, felt) shocked. It was written on the ticket that I had to visit the police station to pay the fine. This taught me the lesson that parking rules..... (is, was, are) to be obeyed.

**12. Choose and copy the best answer:**

One day I was with my friends. They..... (had discussed, were discussing, are discussing) some social and political problems. But I..... (was not interested, is not interested, interested) in them. Suddenly I saw my brother coming..... (on, with, at) a newspaper. He informed me that ..... (a, an, the) SEE result had been sent to every school. I took my bicycle and reached the school in a few minutes. I saw the Headmaster..... (when, which, who) was sitting in his office. He congratulated me for my grand success. When I came home, my parents asked me if I..... (had passed, has passed, pass). I replied "Yes!" Then my father said to me, "You have scored 80%, .....? (don't you, haven't you, hasn't he). I told him that none of the students..... (have, had, has) scored 80%. If I didn't work hard, I..... (can't, couldn't, couldn't have) get success. At last, he got me..... (bring, to bring, brought) a kilo of sweets.

**13. Choose and copy the best answer:**

One evening..... (a/an/ the) cowboy gathered his cattle to go back home. He..... (notice/noticed/notices) that a calf was missing. He had to look for it, .....? (hadn't he, didn't he, did he). Yes of course, he searched it for a while but all in vain. So he prayed to God that he..... (will offer/would offer/ offered) an egg if the God caught his calf thief. A few minutes later as he passed..... (by/through/from) the forest, he came upon his lost calf. But the calf was dead and it..... (is eaten, was being eaten, would be eaten) by a cruel lion. The cowboy found out that the lion was his calf thief..... (However/Therefore/As soon as) he saw the lion, he shook with fear and prayed to the God again. "Lord. I vowed that..... (he would offer/I would offer/ he had offered) you an egg if I came upon the calf thief. Now I vow that I will offer you a hen if you ..... (help/helped/ would help) me escape from this thief's claws." Hearing his vow, the God made the lion..... (go, to go, gone) toward its den.

**14. Choose and copy the correct answer:**

There was once..... (a, an, the) old farmer. He..... (has, have, had) three sons. They were lazy. They didn't work in the field. He feared that his sons..... (will suffer, would suffer, suffer) much after his death. .... (Because, So, However), he thought of

a plan to make his sons work in the field. One day he called his sons and told them that the treasures..... (buried, were buried, has been buried) somewhere in the field. He told his sons, "If you dug up the field, you ..... (will get, would get, would have got) them." They were tempted to the treasures. They began to dig the field, but could not find the treasures anywhere. .... (At, On, To) the same time they sowed seeds in the field. There was a fine crop. The sons..... (became, become, becomes) rich. Thus, the old father made his sons..... (to work, work, worked) hard, ..... (did he, didn't he, was he)?

**15. Choose and copy the correct answer:**

Once there lived ..... (a, an, the) cruel lion in a forest. The lion used to kill the animals recklessly. The animals were very worried..... (as, because, because of) his ruthless behaviour. One day, they all..... (hold, held, holding) a meeting with the lion and made a compromise with him to send one animal a day in turn. The lion agreed it happily at once. In turn, when an old but clever hare's turn came, he asked himself if he..... (can, could, may) bring out any solution to this problem. He made a plan to trick the lion. So he went late to the lion's den. The lion said, "Why ..... (were you, are you, weren't you) late?" In response, the hare told the lion that he met a new lion..... (in, on, at) the way. The lion said, "You are telling a false story, .....? (isn't you, are you, aren't you). The hare insisted that he was telling the truth. The hare said that the new lion was claiming him the king of the jungle. The lion roared that he would kill the new lion. Then, the lion..... (was taken, is taken, had taken) to a deep well. The hare asked the lion to look into it. The lion saw his own shadow in the water. He thought of the shadow to the new lion and jumped into the well. In this way, the hare..... (had, got, made) the lion to jump into the well. If the hare had not tricked the lion, the rest of animals in the jungle..... (will lose, would lose, would have lost) their life.

**16. Choose and copy the best answer:**

One day a young donkey saw a wolf coming towards him. .... (A/An/The) donkey was very much frightened. But he at once thought..... (of/in/at) a trick. Walking away slowly, he began to limp badly. The wolf came up and asked him..... (why he is/why am I/why he was) so lame. The donkey said he had a thorn in his hind-foot. The wolf..... (requested/was requested/is requested) to pull it out for him. If the donkey had not pretended so, the wolf..... (had attacked/ would attack/ would have attacked) him. The wolf, on the other hand, was thinking he could in this way get the donkey's foot between his teeth and..... (have/ has/had) a delicious meal. The wolf ran round behind the donkey..... (because/ because of/in spite of) happiness. But as soon as he..... (comes, came, has come) near the donkey's heels, the donkey kicked the wolf in the mouth. This made the wolf..... (ran/ run/ to run) away. The donkey was really clever, .....? (was he/wasn't he/wouldn't he).